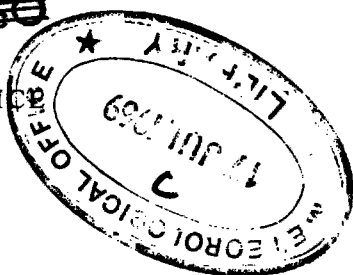


Met. O. 522

~~DUPLICATE ALSO~~

METEOROLOGICAL OFFICE



THE MARINE OBSERVER'S HANDBOOK

9th EDITION

016276

LONDON
HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE
1969

551.501.1 (02)

551.501.1

© *Crown copyright 1969*

Published by

HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE

To be purchased from
49 High Holborn, London W.C.1
13A Castle Street, Edinburgh 2
109 St. Mary Street, Cardiff CF1 1JW
Brazennose Street, Manchester M60 8AS
50 Fairfax Street, Bristol BS1 3DE
258-259 Broad Street, Birmingham 1
7-11 Linenhall Street, Belfast BT2 8AY
or through any bookseller

Price £1 12s. 6d. net

SBN 11 400052 2

Printed in Scotland for Her Majesty's Stationery Office by David J. Clark Limited Glasgow.

(O.N. PS 303918)_Dd. 138634 K26 3/69 DJC Ltd.

NOT FOR LOAN OUTSIDE HQ

METEOROLOGICAL OFFICE
(Marine Division)

Atlases of Ocean Currents^{*}

A series of five atlases giving world wide coverage of the ocean current circulation, prepared by the Marine Division of the Meteorological Office. The charts have been compiled from observations of surface currents sent to the Meteorological Office by voluntary marine observers in Britain merchant ships, and from observations made in H. M. ships forwarded by the Hydrographer of the Navy.

Currents of the Indian Ocean. (50°S-30°N, 20°E-140°E)
(M.O.392) 1939, reprinted 1956. New Edition In Prep.

Quarterly Surface Current Charts of the South Pacific
(Met. O. 435). 2nd Edition 1967. 92s. 6d. (94s. 1d. by post)

Both the above atlases contain quarterly "current arrow" and "current rose" charts.

Quarterly Surface Current Charts of the Atlantic Ocean.
(60°S-70°N, 80°W-20°E) (M.O.466) 1945, reprinted 1957.
35s. 0d. (by post 37s. 0d.)

Quarterly Surface Current Charts of the Western North Pacific
Ocean with monthly chartlets of the China Seas (0°-60°N,
98°E-160°W) (M.O.485) 1949. 50s. (by post 51s.)

Quarterly Surface Current Charts of the Eastern North
Pacific. (0°-60°N, 160°W-65°W) (M.O. 655) 1959.
15s. (by post 16s. 4d.)

These three atlases contain current rose charts, predominant current charts, and vector mean current charts.

**Other Meteorological Office publications (including the Marine Division's meteorological atlases, ice atlases, handbooks, etc.) are listed in Government Publications Sectional List No. 37, obtainable free from H.M.S.O.*

Obtainable from
HER MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE
or through any bookseller

F-65
STOCK 2



3 8078 0001 8071 3

217423

Sestrel
ABSOLUTELY
RELIABLE

**Sextants... Compasses... Telescopes
Binoculars... Marine Clocks... Logs...
Barometers... Sounding Equipment...
Chart Instruments... Thermometers...
Signalling Lamps... Searchlights...
The Sestreline Reflector Binnacle**

AGENTS FOR THE SALE OF ADMIRALTY CHARTS
A rapid Chart Service—*London to any port in the World*—Charts can be despatched at the shortest notice by airfreight. Immediate attention to all orders, large or small.

Fully illustrated catalogue on request

Head Office: STATION WORKS, BARKING, ESSEX: 01-594 4054/6
GLASGOW: 29 St. Vincent Place, C1. CITY 6956

CHARTS



SOUTHAMPTON

COMPLETE WORLD COVERAGE
CHART CORRECTION SERVICE

COMPASS ADJUSTERS

B.O.T. CERTIFICATED



MARINE OPTICIANS

F. SMITH & SON

"ALEXANDRA HOUSE"
10-11 QUEEN'S TERRACE
SOUTHAMPTON, HANTS.
Telephone: 0703 22206 and 28832
Telegrams: Adjuster, Southampton

CONTENTS

		<i>Page</i>
<i>Foreword</i>		vi

PART I INSTRUMENTAL OBSERVATIONS

CHAPTER	1	Atmospheric Pressure	1
	2	The Measurement of Temperature and Humidity	20
	3	General Meteorological Instruments	33

PART II NON-INSTRUMENTAL OBSERVATIONS

CHAPTER	4	Wind, Weather and Visibility	35
		‘State of Sea’ Photographs <i>facing</i>	40
	5	Clouds and cloud height by estimation	44
		Cloud Photographs <i>facing</i>	56
	6	Ocean Waves	52
	7	Observations of Ocean Currents and Ice	60

PART III PHENOMENA

CHAPTER	8	The Observation of Phenomena	73
	9	Astronomical Phenomena	76
	10	Phenomena of the High Atmosphere	82
	11	Phenomena of the Lower Atmosphere	93
	12	Marine Phenomena	111

PART IV SUMMARY OF METEOROLOGICAL WORK AT SEA

CHAPTER	13	Organization of Voluntary Meteorological Work at Sea	115
	14	Extracts from the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1960. Safety of Navigation, Regulations 2, 3 and 4	120

CONTENTS—*continued*

TABLES

1-11 Barometer correction tables. The table and page numbers are as follows:

	INCHES		MILLIBARS	
	Date of N.P.L. certificate			
	On or before 31.12.54	On or after 1.1.55	On or before 31.12.54	On or after 1.1.55
Temperature correction, Kew-pattern barometer	1 (p. 125)	2 (p. 126)	6 (p. 128)	7 (p. 129)
Correction to standard gravity	3 (p. 127)	4 (p. 127)	8 (p. 130)	9 (p. 130)
Correction to mean sea level	5 (p. 128)		10 (p. 131)	
Approx. corrections for temperature and height	11 (p. 132)			

	<i>Page</i>
12 Correction to be applied to the observed pressure for diurnal variation	133
13 Average values of the barometric change in an hour, due to diurnal variation	133
14 Equivalents in millibars of inches of mercury at 0°C and standard gravity 980-665 cm/sec ²	134
15 Dew-point, °C (for use with marine screen)	136
16 Dew-point, °C (for use with aspirated psychrometer)	138
17 Dew-point, °F (for use with marine screen)	140
18 Dew-point, °F (for use with aspirated psychrometer).	142
19 Conversion of temperatures from Fahrenheit scale to Celsius and Absolute scales	144
20 Conversion of nautical miles to statute miles and kilometres	145
21 Conversion of feet to metres	145
22 To obtain approximately the true force and direction of the wind from its apparent force and direction, on the deck of a moving vessel <i>facing</i>	146

APPENDIX

Units of the CGS (centimetre—gramme—second) System	147
INDEX	148

ILLUSTRATIONS

<i>Fig.</i>		<i>Page</i>
1	A simple mercury barometer	1
2	The Kew-pattern marine barometer	2
3	The correction slide	
4	Stowage of the Kew-pattern marine barometer	
5	The marine open-scale barograph	
6	The precision aneroid barometer Mk 1	
7	The precision aneroid barometer Mk 2	
8	Thermometer, and air and sea thermometer protectors	Between
9	The portable marine screen	pages 8 and 9
10	The canvas sea-temperature bucket	
11	The rubber sea-temperature bucket	
12	The British radiosonde	
13	Cup generator anemometer Mk 4	
14	Cup generator anemometers <i>in situ</i>	
15	The Moll-Gorczynski solarimeter	
16	Reading an inch barometer, using a vernier scale	10
17	Reading a millibar barometer, using a vernier scale	10
18	Reading the barometer. Errors due to parallax	11
19	Code numbers used to indicate the characteristic of barometric tendency	17
20	Mean diurnal variation of pressure	19
21	Muslin and wick for wet-bulb thermometers	24
22	Various sources of local heating in a merchant ship	28
23	Wind, parallelogram of velocities	39
24	Characteristics of a simple wave	52
25	Representation of a trochoidal wave form	54
26	Refraction of a wave approaching the shore at an angle	56
27	Wave form of the sea-surface	56
28	Estimation of wave height at sea	58
29	Auroral forms	88
30	Mirages	93
31	Halo complex—Hevelius' diagram	98
32	Solar halo complex	100
33	Lunar halo complex	101
34	Forms of halo cross	103
	"STATE OF SEA" PHOTOGRAPHS	Between pages 40 and 41
	CLOUD PHOTOGRAPHS	Between pages 56 and 57

FOREWORD

The Marine Observer's Handbook is written for three purposes:

- (1) To assist officers aboard vessels of the British Commonwealth, who voluntarily make observations at sea on behalf of Meteorological Services, to carry out this work in an efficient and uniform manner.
- (2) To encourage all mariners to take an interest in meteorology and to assist them in their study of this important and interesting subject.
- (3) To provide a book of reference for candidates for Masters' and Mates' examinations.

It will be noted that this book deals with meteorological instruments and the practical aspect of making observations. The companion volume, entitled *Meteorology for Mariners*, embraces the theory and the application of meteorology to the seaman's profession.

A study of the syllabus issued by the Ministry of Transport will suggest that candidates for the Second Mate's Certificate might usefully study Chapters 1 and 2. Candidates for the Mate's Certificate might study Chapters 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7. Candidates for the Master's and Extra Master's Certificate are advised to study all the subject matter in this book.

The seaman is so dependent on the weather, not only for the safety of his ship but also for his personal comfort, that an interest in meteorology on his part is essential. It is undoubtedly true that in this modern age of large, fast, power-driven ships, just as in the ancient days of oared galleys and long-ships, and more recently of ocean-going sailing ships, no ship's officer can consider himself a complete sailorman unless he is "weather wise". Meteorological observing tends to quicken the eye of the observer, making him more alert and more ready for emergencies. The practised observer is not only on the look-out for changes in weather and cloud and for interesting phenomena, but by his general alertness he will ensure that there are no "Irish pennants", loose tarpaulins, etc., when he is on deck.

Essentials to efficiency in meteorological observations are accuracy and attention to detail. The results are beneficial not only to Meteorological Services, and thence to mankind, but to the ship herself. By accurate reading and intelligent interpretation of humidity observations, for example, the master can decide whether ventilation of cargo is wise or not, or by a combination of sea and air temperature and humidity, the likelihood of fog can be forecast aboard the ship. Timely notice of a shift of the wind or variation of its force or the sky becoming overcast or gradual deterioration of visibility may, on occasions, save a ship from getting into trouble. The largest and most powerful ship can be delayed or damaged by high winds, rough seas or because of fog. Valuable cargoes can be quickly ruined by unfavourable weather.

Anything that is worth doing is worth doing well and this is particularly so with regard to meteorological observations. A lone ship's observation from "somewhere in the ocean" may hold the key to an otherwise obscure meteorological situation, but it is better to have no observation than an inaccurate or erroneous one. An inaccurate observation may mislead the forecaster and, directly or indirectly as a result of that inaccuracy, a small ship or an aircraft may be lost.

Accuracy is just as important for climatological purposes. In the analysis of meteorological records for the compilation of atlases and for scientific investigation generally, a few inaccurate observations may so bias the results as to tend to falsify the picture. In deciding whether to reject an apparently erroneous observation, the investigator can only use his judgement and experience.

Observers at sea would perhaps be surprised at the many uses to which their observations are put, both commercially and scientifically. To mention only a few: frequencies of winds of gale force are required whenever the load line areas are reviewed; air temperatures and humidities have been useful in the testing of life jackets; meteorological data are needed by the respective research organizations in connection with the design of ships and with the efficiency of radar.

Thus, by taking an intelligent interest in meteorological observations, the seaman contributes to the cause of science and benefits the world in general and his fellow seamen in particular, by increasing our knowledge of meteorology and climatology.

Note to the ninth edition. Numerous revisions and additions have been made in this edition to bring the book up to date. In particular, Part I has been completely revised and a new section has been added to Chapter 10. We are indebted to Mr. J. Paton of Edinburgh University, Professor D. R. Bates of the Queen's University of Belfast, Dr. G. V. Groves of University College, London, and to the Director of the Radio and Space Research Station at Slough for advice and additional text.

MARINE BRANCH,
METEOROLOGICAL OFFICE.
March 1968.

Part I Instrumental Observations

CHAPTER 1

Atmospheric Pressure

The instruments most commonly used for measuring the pressure of the atmosphere are the mercury and aneroid barometers. Until recently, the consistent accuracy required for scientific purposes and for official meteorological work could be achieved only by use of the mercury barometer because of certain inherent errors in the aneroid instrument. The marine-type mercury barometer has been in regular use aboard British observing ships since 1854 and has been so successful that its design has been virtually unchanged through the years. Precision aneroids, having an accuracy similar to that of the mercury instrument, have recently become available; because of their compact size, robust construction and ease of reading and the fact that they do not suffer from the defect of "pumping" at sea, they are gradually being brought into service by the Meteorological Office to replace the mercury instruments. For reasons of economy it has been decided that precision aneroids will only be issued to Selected Ships as and when the mercury instruments become worn out. It will therefore be a very gradual change-over and will inevitably take many years before precision aneroids are in use aboard all our Selected Ships. Both instruments are described below.

The mercury barometer. The principle of the mercury barometer was discovered by Evangelista Torricelli in 1643.

A simple mercury barometer (see Fig. 1) is made by completely filling with

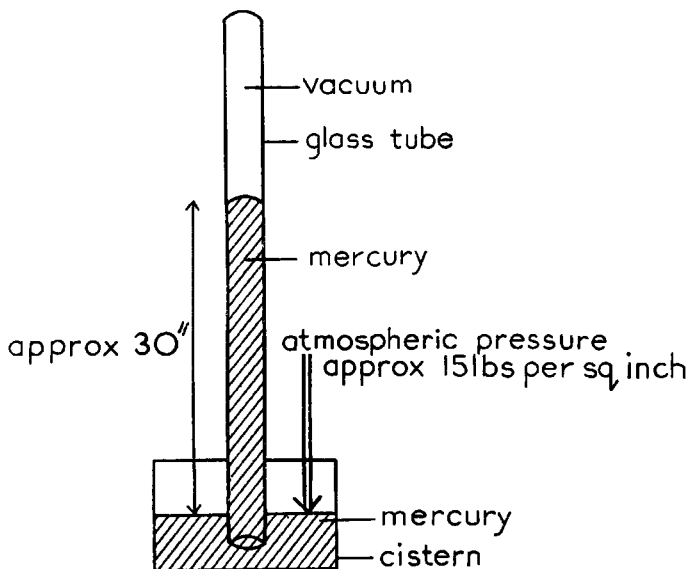


FIG. 1. A simple mercury barometer

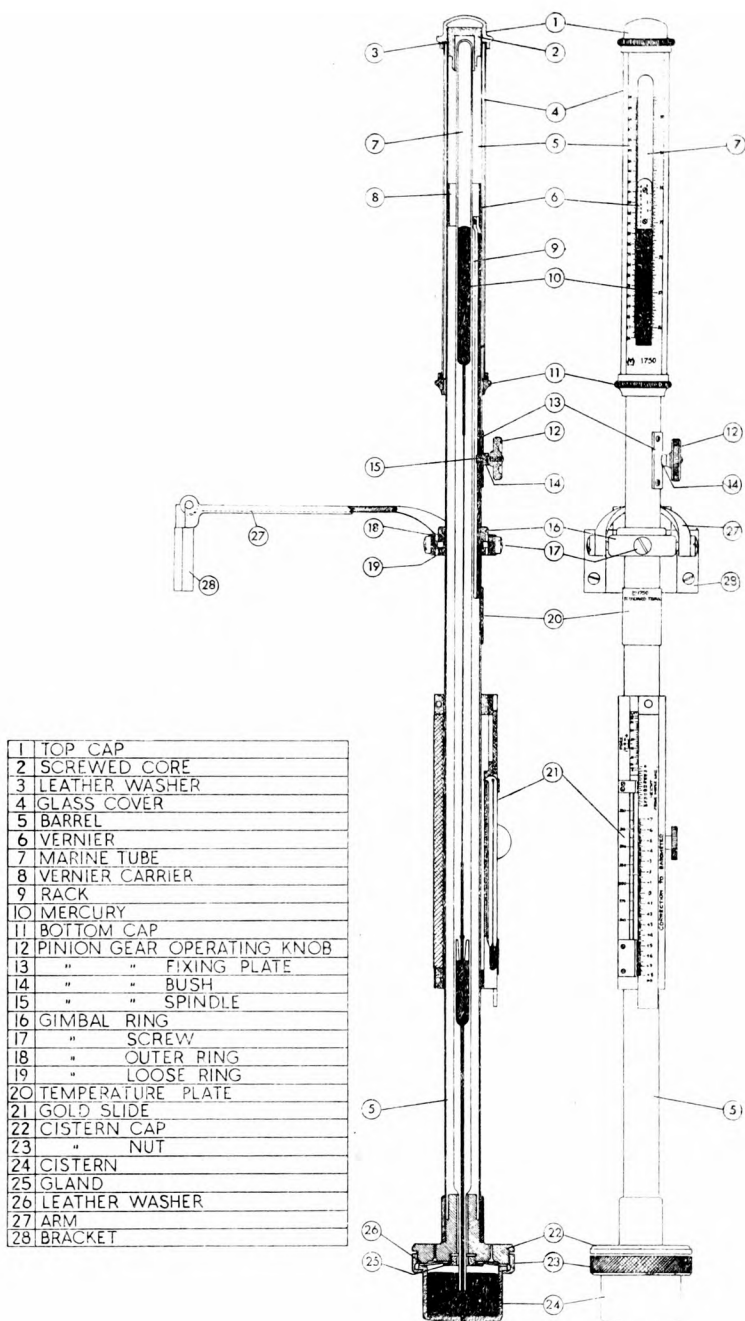


FIG. 2. The Kew-pattern marine barometer

mercury a glass tube closed at one end and some 36 inches in length. The open end is then immersed in a cistern also containing mercury, and the tube is held upright. The mercury column falls, leaving a vacuum at the top of the tube, until the weight of the mercury column *above the level of the mercury in the cistern* just balances the atmospheric pressure which is exerted on the free surface of the mercury in the cistern.

The mercury barometer only gradually passed from this original simple form to that of a practical and portable instrument and was not used by seamen until a century had elapsed.

The Kew-pattern marine barometer. This consists of a glass tube and cistern enclosed in a metal protecting case (*see* Fig. 2). In the upper part of the cistern are one or more small holes which admit the air, and a leather washer, permeable to air, which prevents the mercury from escaping, and also keeps out dust. The bore of the glass tube is considerably constricted for the greater part of its length, and, for part of this constriction, is reduced to a fine capillary. The object of these constrictions is to reduce the amount of "pumping", i.e., oscillations of the top of the mercury column, caused by the movements of the ship and by gusts of wind. At the top of the mercury column the bore of the tube is greater; this minimises the effect of "capillarity"* on the height of the centre of the mercury column, but leaves the upper surface of the column sufficiently convex to facilitate accurate reading. An air-trap in the tube prevents air from rising into the space above the mercury column, which should be an almost perfect vacuum. On the metal protecting case is a scale, with a vernier for reading the height of the mercury.

For the purpose of ascertaining the temperature of the barometer itself, a thermometer is attached. On barometers graduated in millibars, the thermometer is graduated in degrees Absolute on older instruments, but in degrees Celsius on those made after 1st January 1955; on inch barometers, it is usually graduated in degrees Fahrenheit.

Graduation of barometer scales. From the invention of the barometer until comparatively recent years the reading was invariably expressed as *the height of the mercury column necessary to balance the atmospheric pressure at that instant*. In the British Isles, atmospheric pressure was therefore expressed in inches and decimals of an inch, while countries using the metre as a unit of length gave the pressure in millimetres and decimals of a millimetre. The graduations are marked on a metal scale at the side of the instrument. Barometer scales graduated in inches are readable by vernier to a thousandth of an inch (-001). (*See* Fig. 16.)

When we express the pressure in terms of inches or millimetres of mercury, we mean that the pressure is equal to the weight per unit area of a column of mercury of that height. If water were used as the liquid the barometer would have to be over 30 feet long; mercury, which is used in practice on account of its high density, only needs a tube of a little over 30 inches.

*Capillarity is the tendency of liquids in narrow tubes to rise above or fall below the hydrostatic level. This tendency depends on the relative attraction of the molecules of the liquid for one another and for the molecules of the material of the tube. The narrower the tube, the greater the tendency to rise or fall, so that the effect is particularly well marked in hair-like or capillary tubes, hence the name "capillarity". If the liquid wets the solid material, it will rise in the tube, but if not, it will be depressed. In the case of water in a glass tube, therefore, the water column is raised, particularly at the edge, while the reverse is the case with mercury in a glass tube, for mercury does not wet glass.

The original procedure in measuring barometric pressure, which is still often used, was to measure the height of the mercury column and to give that height, in inches or millimetres, duly corrected, as a measure of the atmospheric pressure. It was later thought preferable that pressures should be expressed in units of pressure, not in units of height.

Pressure is force per unit area and the measure of a force is the acceleration it would give to a body free to move. In the CGS system*, used almost universally in other scientific work, the unit of force is the *dyne*, the force which, if applied to a mass of one gramme, will produce an acceleration of one centimetre per second per second. A pressure of one *megadyne* (one million dynes) per square centimetre is almost equal to the average atmospheric pressure at sea level. It was proposed by V. Bjerknes that this CGS pressure unit should be named a *bar* (from the Greek *baros*, weight) and should be adopted as the meteorological unit of atmospheric pressure. A bar, however, is too large a unit for convenience; in practice the millibar, the thousandth part of a bar and therefore a pressure of 1,000 dynes per square centimetre, is used as a working unit. Since May 1914, atmospheric pressures have been recorded by the Meteorological Office in millibars instead of in inches, and this is the generally accepted international method under arrangements made by the World Meteorological Organization.

Barometers graduated in millibars have a longer line at each tenth millibar. By means of the vernier the pressure can be read to one-tenth of a millibar (see Fig. 17). One thousand millibars equal one bar. This is equivalent to a pressure of 29.53 inches, or 750.1 millimetres of mercury at the standard value of gravity of 980.665 cm/sec², and is thus very nearly equal to the average pressure of the atmosphere at sea level. An increase of one millibar (0.295 inch) in atmospheric pressure therefore indicates an increase of about a thousandth of the previous pressure.

CORRECTIONS TO MERCURY BAROMETERS

For a given pressure, the height of the mercury column of a barometer depends upon the density (and therefore on the temperature) of the mercury and on the value of the acceleration due to gravity which is dependent on the latitude and height of the place of observation. Moreover, the indication on a barometer scale set up to measure the height of the column will depend upon the temperature of the scale itself. In order to make barometer readings comparable all over the world it is therefore necessary to specify "standard conditions"—temperature of mercury and of scale, and acceleration due to gravity—and to compute tables whereby corrections may be made for any departure from these conditions. In addition the readings have to be reduced to a standard altitude, which for altitudes of not more than a few hundred feet is mean sea level, and reduction tables have also been computed for this purpose.

The "standard conditions" referred to above were changed with effect from 1st January 1955, by a decision of the World Meteorological Organization at Geneva in 1953. The standard value of gravity was changed from 980.62 cm/sec² (which is very nearly equal to the gravity at mean sea level in latitude 45°)

*Further information on the CGS system will be found in the Appendix to the Tables, at the end of this book. (page 147).

to 980-665 cm/sec² (which is a conventional standard). For barometers reading in inches the standard temperature was changed from 32°F for the mercury and 62°F for the scale to 0°C for the whole instrument. For Meteorological Office barometers reading in millibars it was changed from 285°A* (12°C) to 0°C, for the whole instrument.

Because of these changes and because it will be many years before all the older barometers are converted or replaced it is now necessary to have two sets of correction tables available for mercury barometers, whether they be graduated in inches or millibars, one for instruments adjusted to the old standard conditions and one for those adjusted to read correctly at gravity 980-665 cm/sec² and temperature 0°C.

All mercury barometers have also to be corrected for capillarity†, which tends to depress the mercury in the tube; variation in the quantity of mercury in the cistern according to the height of the mercury column; defective vacuum, etc., but these are all made very small by suitable allowances in the process of construction and any residual errors and errors due to imperfections in construction or adjustment are included in the "index errors" of the instrument. These index errors are determined at the National Physical Laboratory for all Meteorological Office mercury barometers and are given on a certificate supplied by that institution.

It is desirable that the index correction of a mercury barometer should be checked every three months, as this correction is liable to change slowly. All Port Meteorological Officers and Merchant Navy Agents have a standard barometer which is available for such comparisons and Meteorological Office tested barometers are available for comparison in many Board of Trade offices, dock offices, etc., in the U.K. (*see Admiralty List of Radio Signals*, Vol. 3 or commercial nautical almanacs), or a reading may be obtained by telephoning the nearest Weather Centre or aerodrome. The ship's barometer should be corrected for temperature, altitude and latitude (i.e. gravity) before a comparison is made.

Corrections to inch barometers

CORRECTION FOR TEMPERATURE. With increase of temperature, mercury expands, so that its weight per unit volume decreases; a column of greater height will therefore be required to balance a stated air pressure when the temperature is high than when it is low. The correction required to adjust the height to that at a standard temperature is therefore negative when the temperature is above the standard and positive when it is below. For an inch barometer adjusted to the old conventions, the standard temperature at which the mercury in the barometer would read correctly is 32°F. The metal scale on the instrument, however, reads correctly at 62°F; the reason for this is that the standard inch is legally defined as a certain height engraved on brass at a temperature of 62°F. Table 1 gives the temperature correction for such a barometer. The net effect of the different standard temperatures for the *brass scale* (62°F) and the *mercury* (32°F) is that the temperature at which the temperature correction in the table becomes zero is below 32°F. At any other temperature, the temperature

*See page 21.

†See footnote on page 3.

correction is proportional to the height of the mercury column, that is, to the atmospheric pressure. Table 1 therefore gives the correction for ranges both of temperature and barometer readings. The temperature to be used with this table is that of the thermometer attached to the barometer, which, if the exposure of the barometer is correct, will give the temperature both of the mercury and of the brass scale.

For an inch barometer adjusted to the new conventions the standard temperature at which both mercury and scale would read correctly is 32°F. The appropriate corrections are given in Table 2. Here also the temperature to be used is that of the attached thermometer.

CORRECTION FOR GRAVITY. The barometer reading now has to be corrected for the variation of gravity from the standard value. Owing to the flattening of the earth at the poles, the distance of its surface from its centre of gravity is least in those regions, and greatest at the equator. In addition, the vertical component of the centrifugal force due to the earth's rotation is greatest at the equator and decreases to zero at the poles. The force of gravity, therefore, increases steadily from low to high latitudes. The greater the force of gravity, the greater will be the weight of a given mass of mercury and hence the smaller will be the height of the column required to counterbalance a given pressure of the air. For a barometer adjusted to the old conventions, standard gravity is 980.62 cm/sec², which is very nearly the force of gravity at mean sea level in latitude 45°. The height of the mercury column is accordingly corrected to what it would be in that latitude, the correction being negative in low latitudes and positive in high latitudes.

At any given latitude differing from 45°, the correction to be applied is proportional to the mass of mercury forming the mercury column of the barometer. It is therefore proportional to the height of that column. Table 3 gives the correction at all latitudes and for two readings, 29 and 31 inches.

For a barometer adjusted to the new conventions standard gravity is 980.665 cm/sec² and Table 4 gives the appropriate corrections for each degree of latitude and for the two pressures, 29 and 31 inches.

REDUCTION TO STANDARD LEVEL. When the barometer reading has been corrected for temperature, it must next be corrected for height above sea level. The pressure of the atmosphere at any level is equal to the total weight of all the air above a plate of unit area, held horizontally at that level. If such a plate were moved vertically upwards, the total weight above it must decrease by the weight of the column of air through which the plate had passed, and the pressure would fall accordingly. Thus, a barometer reading of 30 inches at sea level would fall to about 28.9 inches at 1,000 feet, and to about 21 inches at 10,000 feet. The barometer reading must therefore be reduced to a standard level, and for altitudes of not more than a few hundred feet above sea level, the standard adopted is mean sea level. As the weight of a given volume of air decreases as the temperature rises, this correction depends not only on the height above mean sea level, but also on the temperature of that air (*see* Table 5). The temperature to be used for this table is that of the dry bulb in the screen, i.e., the temperature of the atmosphere at the time of measurement.

Besides these corrections there is also the *index correction* to be applied.

EXAMPLE. In latitude 51° N, the barometer reads 30.240 inches at a height of 36 feet above sea level. The attached thermometer reads 60°F, the dry bulb in the screen reads 58°F, the index correction is +.005, and the date of the N.P.L. certificate is 1.6.53.

Uncorrected reading	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	Inches	30.240
Index correction	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	+	.005
											30.245
Temperature correction for 60°F. (Table 1)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	-	.085
											30.160
Gravity correction in latitude 51°N. (Table 3)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	+	.016
											30.176
Height correction for 36 feet at air temperature of 58°F. (Table 5)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	+	.039
											30.215
Corrected barometer reading	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...

There are simple formulae by which approximate values of the temperature and height corrections can be obtained without tables. As these may sometimes be useful, they are shown in Table 11.

Corrections to Millibar Barometers

CORRECTIONS FOR TEMPERATURE AND GRAVITY. As previously explained, the standard conditions for millibar barometers were changed from gravity 980.62 cm/sec² and temperature 285°A to gravity 980.665 cm/sec² and temperature 0°C (273°A) with effect from 1st January 1955. The temperature corrections for barometers conforming to the old conventions, i.e., with N.P.L. certificates dated 31st December 1954 or earlier, are given in Table 6 and those for new barometers, i.e. with N.P.L. certificates dated 1st January 1955 or later, in Table 7. The corresponding gravity corrections are given in Table 8 (old barometers) and Table 9 (new barometers). These tables are all similar in form to the corresponding tables for inch barometers and require no further explanation.

REDUCTION TO STANDARD LEVEL. Corrections for reducing the barometer reading in millibars to mean sea level are given in Table 10 for various heights up to 100 feet and dry-bulb temperatures in degrees Fahrenheit and Celsius.

The index correction as given in the N.P.L. certificate must also be applied.

EXAMPLE. In latitude 27°N, the barometer reads 1017.3 mb at a height of 53 feet above sea level. The attached thermometer reads 298°A, the dry bulb in the screen reads 78°F, the index correction of the barometer is +0.3 mb and the date of the N.P.L. certificate is 20.2.57.

Uncorrected reading	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	mb	1017.3
Index correction	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	+	0.3
											1017.6
Temperature correction for 298°A (Table 7)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	-	4.3
											1013.3
Gravity correction in latitude 27°N (Table 9)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	-	1.6
											1011.7
Height correction for 53 ft at air temp. of 78°F (Table 10A)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	+	1.8
											1013.5
Corrected pressure at m.s.l.	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...

The correction slide. Meteorological Office marine barometers are fitted with a correction slide. This attachment makes the use of tables unnecessary for the reduction and correction of millibar barometer readings. (See Fig. 3.)

A sliding piece, movable by rack and pinion, and mounted beside the attached thermometer, carries two scales; the lower, alongside the mercury column of the thermometer, is marked "Correction to Barometer", and the upper, "Height above Water Line". Alongside the upper scale is mounted a strip of metal on which is engraved a "Latitude Scale". On the other side of the latitude scale there is engraved, on the upper part of the "Attached Thermometer Scale", an "Index Scale". The Latitude Scale is fixed in such a position relative to the Index Scale as to allow for the index error of the instrument and should not, therefore, be moved. The whole slide is clamped to the barometer.

There are a number of older-pattern scales in use in which the Index Scale is omitted but these are adjusted for index error of the instrument before issue.

Before reading the barometer, adjust the correction slide so that the height of the barometer above the water line, on the appropriate scale, coincides with the latitude of the ship on the latitude scale. The correction to be applied to the barometer reading is then read off in line with the top of the mercury column in the thermometer.

CONVERSION OF INCHES TO MILLIBARS

A table for the conversion of barometer readings in inches to millibars is given as Table 14. In certain instances abroad, barometric pressures given in millimetres may be encountered. No table is given for the conversion of millimetres to millibars as the conversion may be made very simply by increasing the pressure in millimetres by one third. For example, 750.0 mm is very nearly equal to 1000.0 mb.

In barometers graduated with both millibars and inch scales, and made before 1st January 1955, the uncorrected readings taken at the same time will not be comparable. The reason for this is that the millibar graduation is constructed to give the true atmospheric pressure at its standard temperature of about 285°A (54°F) at sea level in latitude 45°, whereas the inch scale is graduated to give true atmospheric pressure at a temperature somewhat below 32°F at sea level in latitude 45°. (See explanation on page 5). The correction for temperature is different for each scale and it is only when both readings have been fully corrected that they will agree, on conversion.

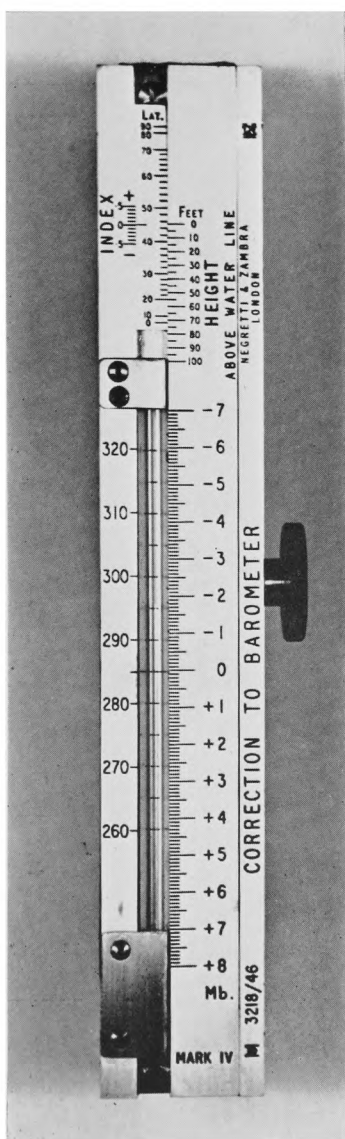
In barometers conforming to the new conventions, however, the readings on the two scales will be directly related by $1000 \text{ mb} = 29.530 \text{ inches}$, because the standard instrumental conditions of temperature and gravity are the same.

THE POSITION, SETTING UP, AND CARE OF THE MERCURY BAROMETER

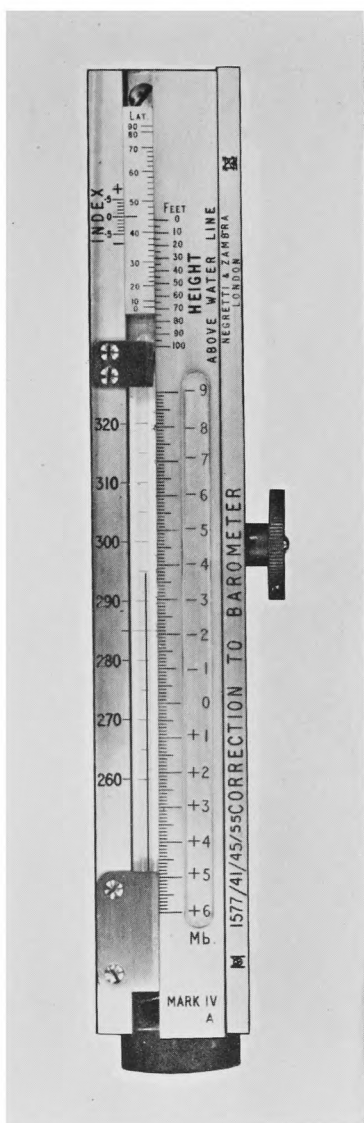
Position of the barometer. In steamships, the mercury barometer is usually situated in the chart room for practical convenience. The chart room is not always the best place for the barometer as it is often in an exposed position. Furthermore, the pumping of a marine barometer is reduced to a minimum when the instrument is near the centre of the ship but, except in small vessels, this is usually impracticable.

It is not possible to give fixed rules for the precise location of the barometer as circumstances vary in different ships. The following points, however, should be observed:—

- (1) It must be out of the way of unauthorized persons.
- (2) It must not be exposed to the direct rays of the sun.

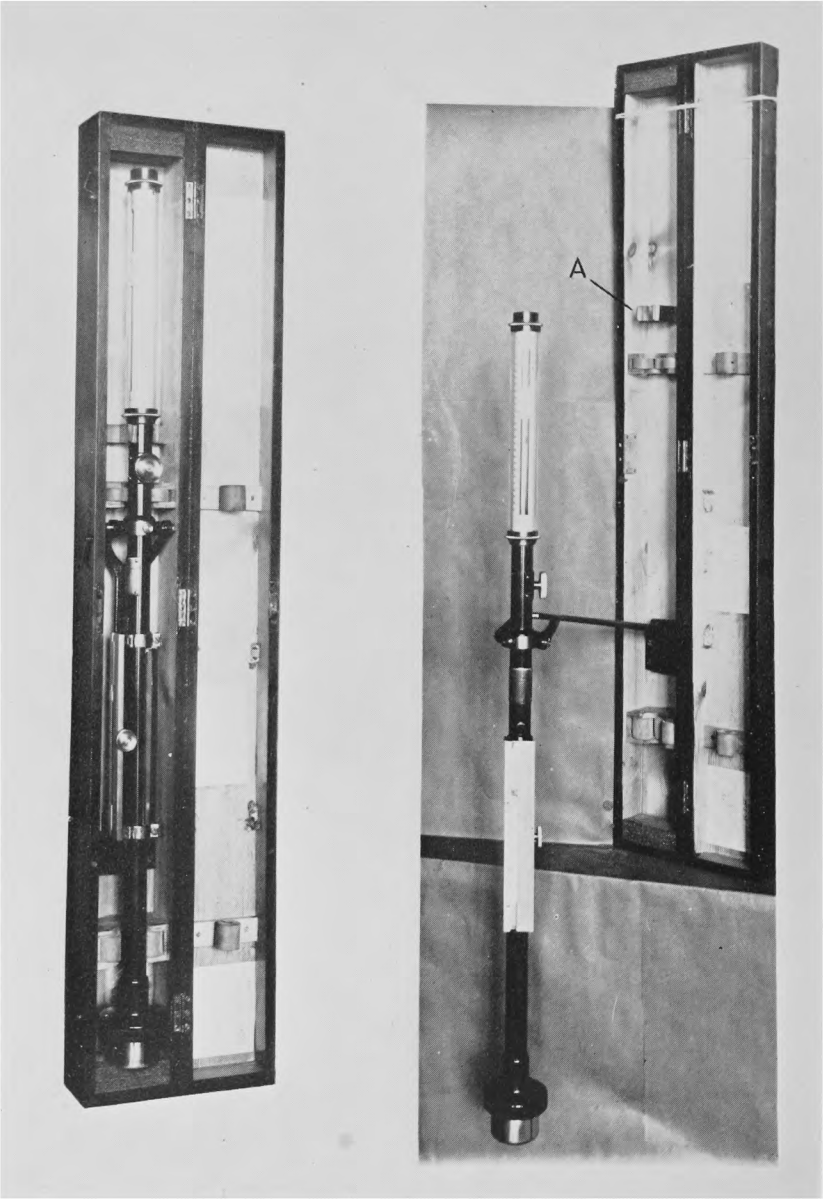


(a)



(b)

FIG. 3. The correction slide. Both these types are at present in use



(a)

(b)

FIG. 4. Stowage of the Kew-pattern marine barometer

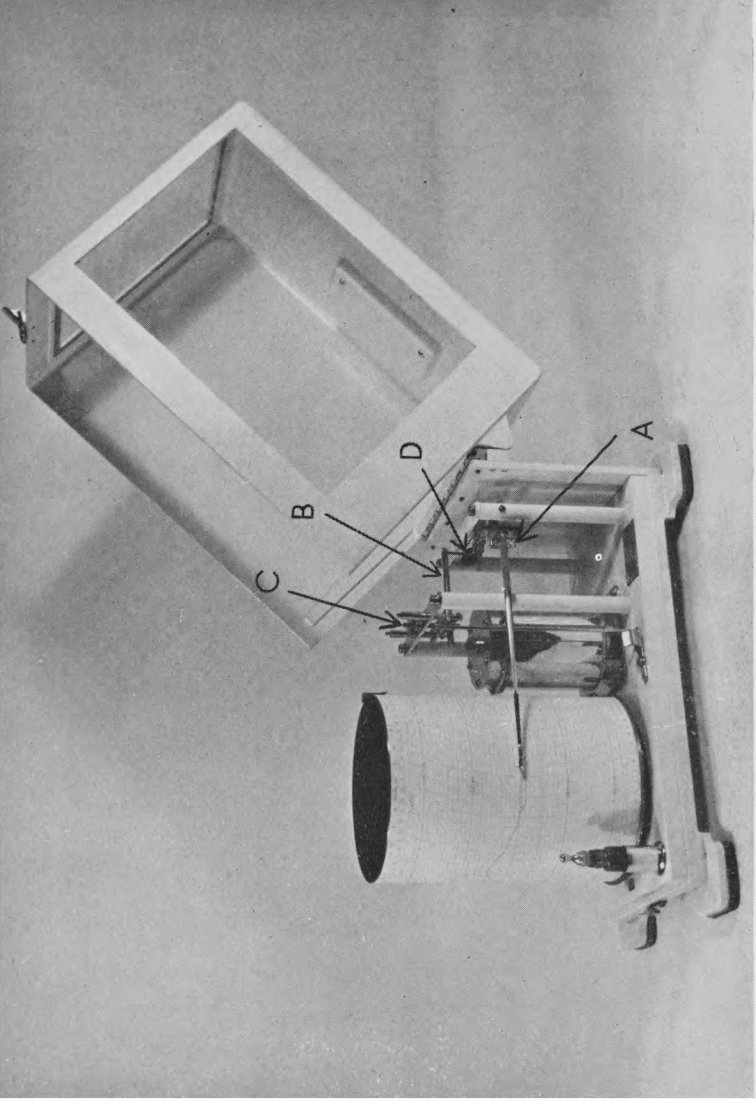


FIG. 5. The marine open-scale barograph

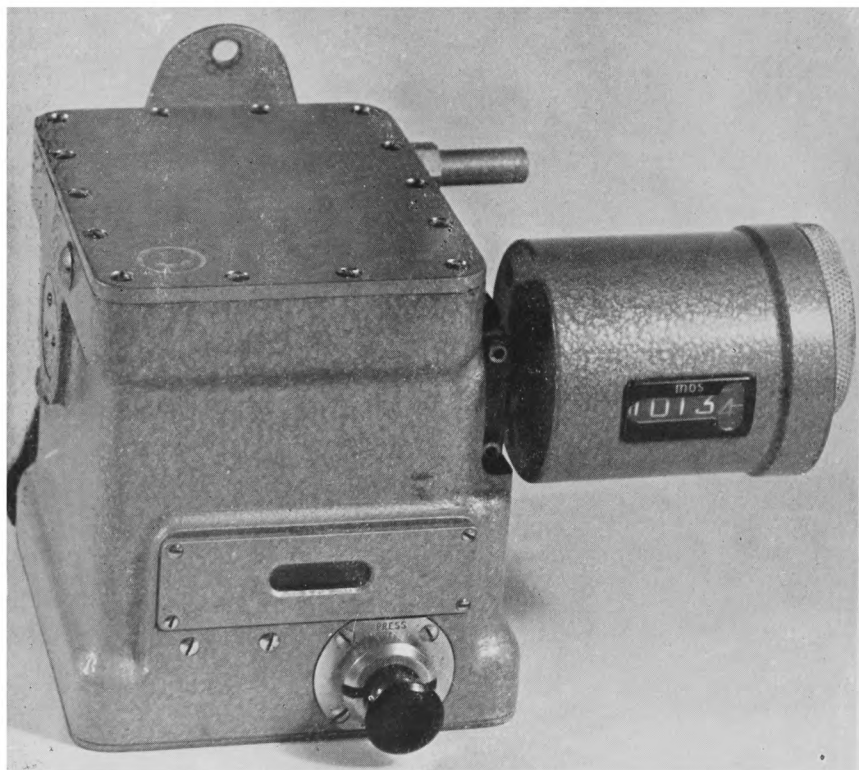


FIG. 6(a). General view of precision aneroid barometer, Mk 1

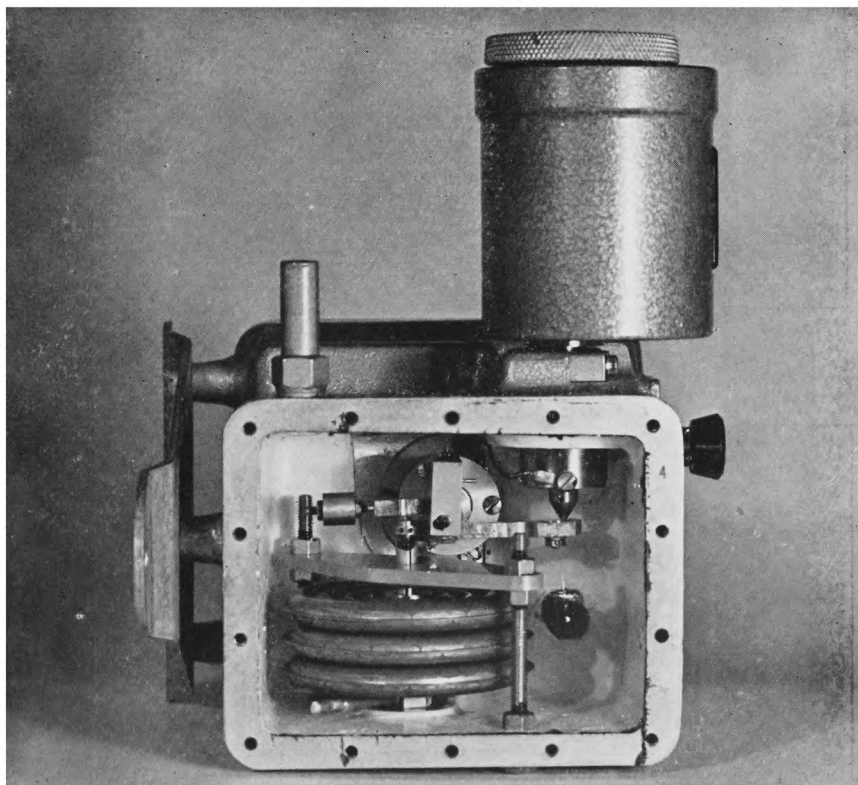


FIG. 6(b). View of interior of precision aneroid barometer, Mk 1

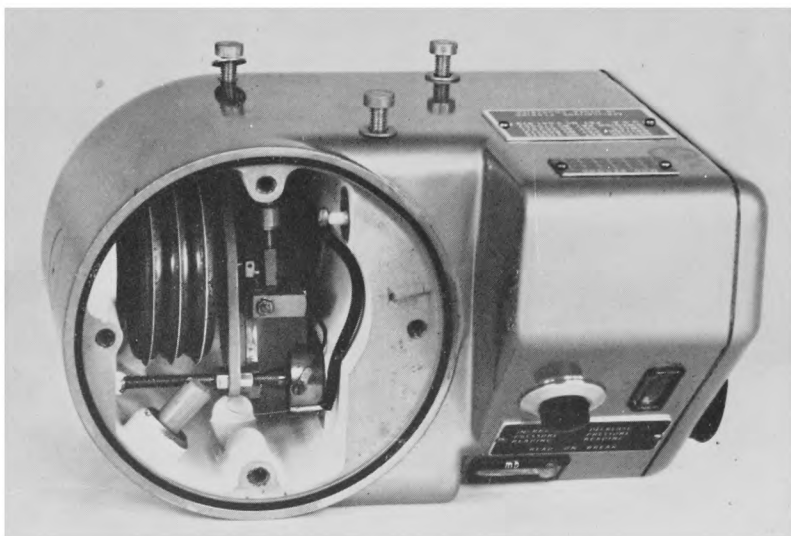
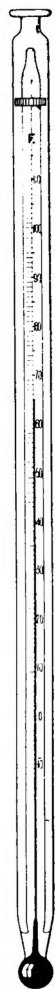
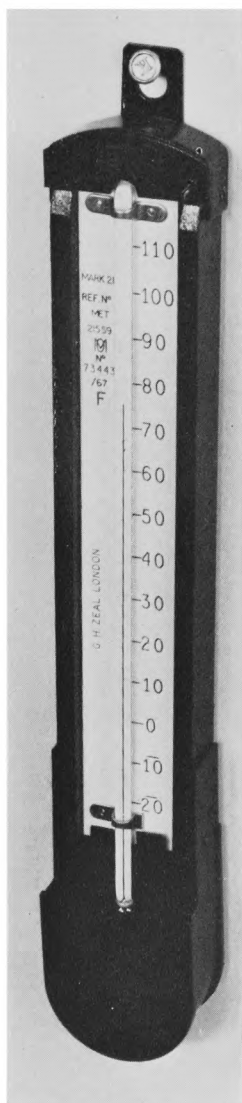


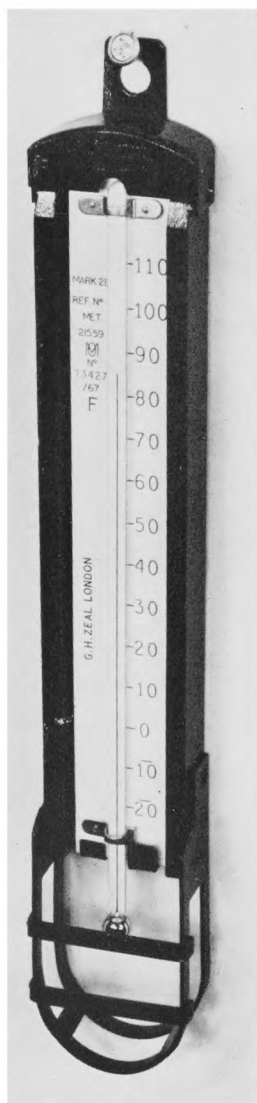
FIG. 7. Precision aneroid barometer Mk 2



(a)



(b)



(c)

FIG. 8. Thermometer and air and sea thermometer protectors

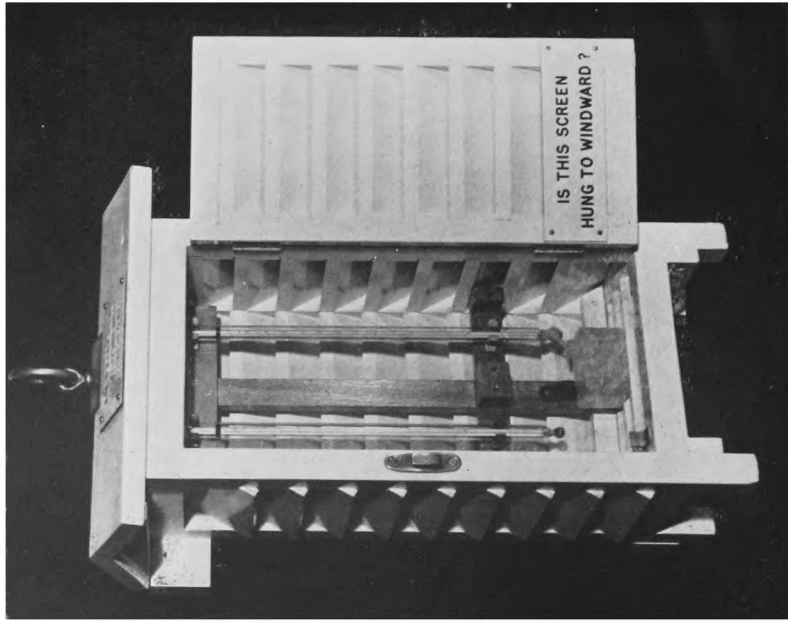


FIG. 9
The portable marine screen

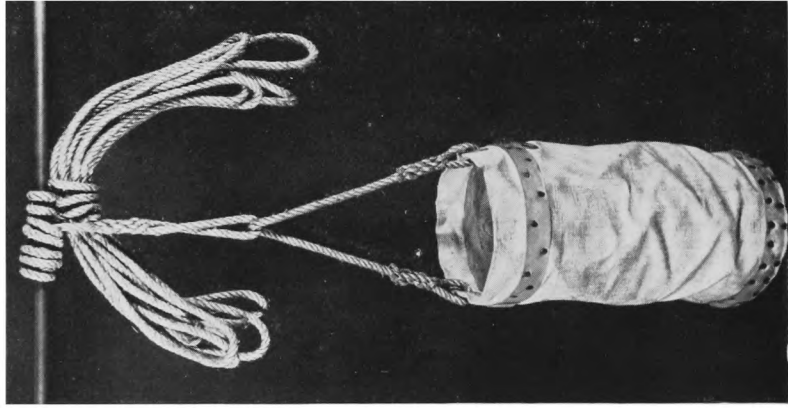
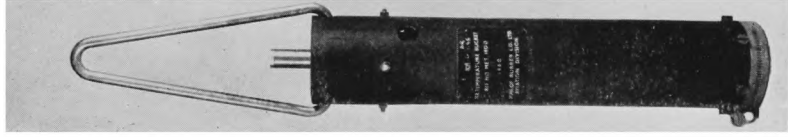


FIG. 10
The canvas sea-temperature bucket

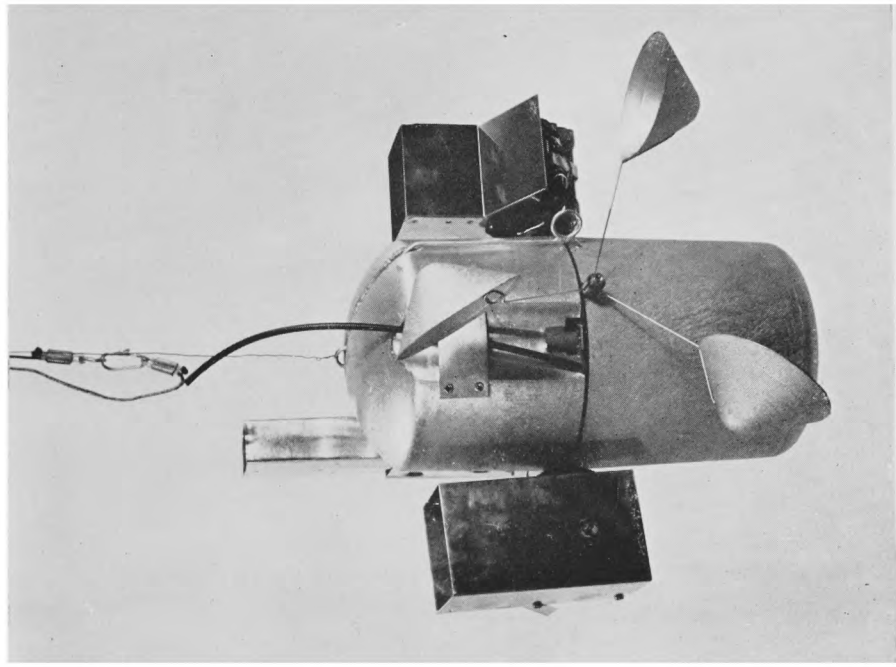


(a)

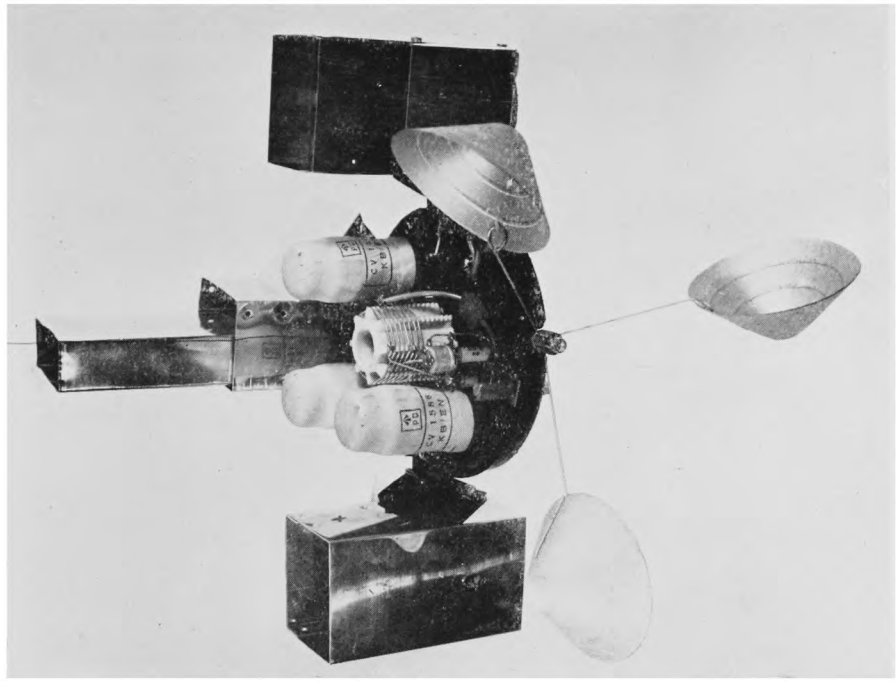


(b)

FIG. 11
The rubber sea-temperature bucket



(a) Assembled for flight



(b). View with covers removed

FIG. 12. The British radiosonde



FIG. 13. Cup generator anemometer Mk 4, with wind vane, dials and recorder

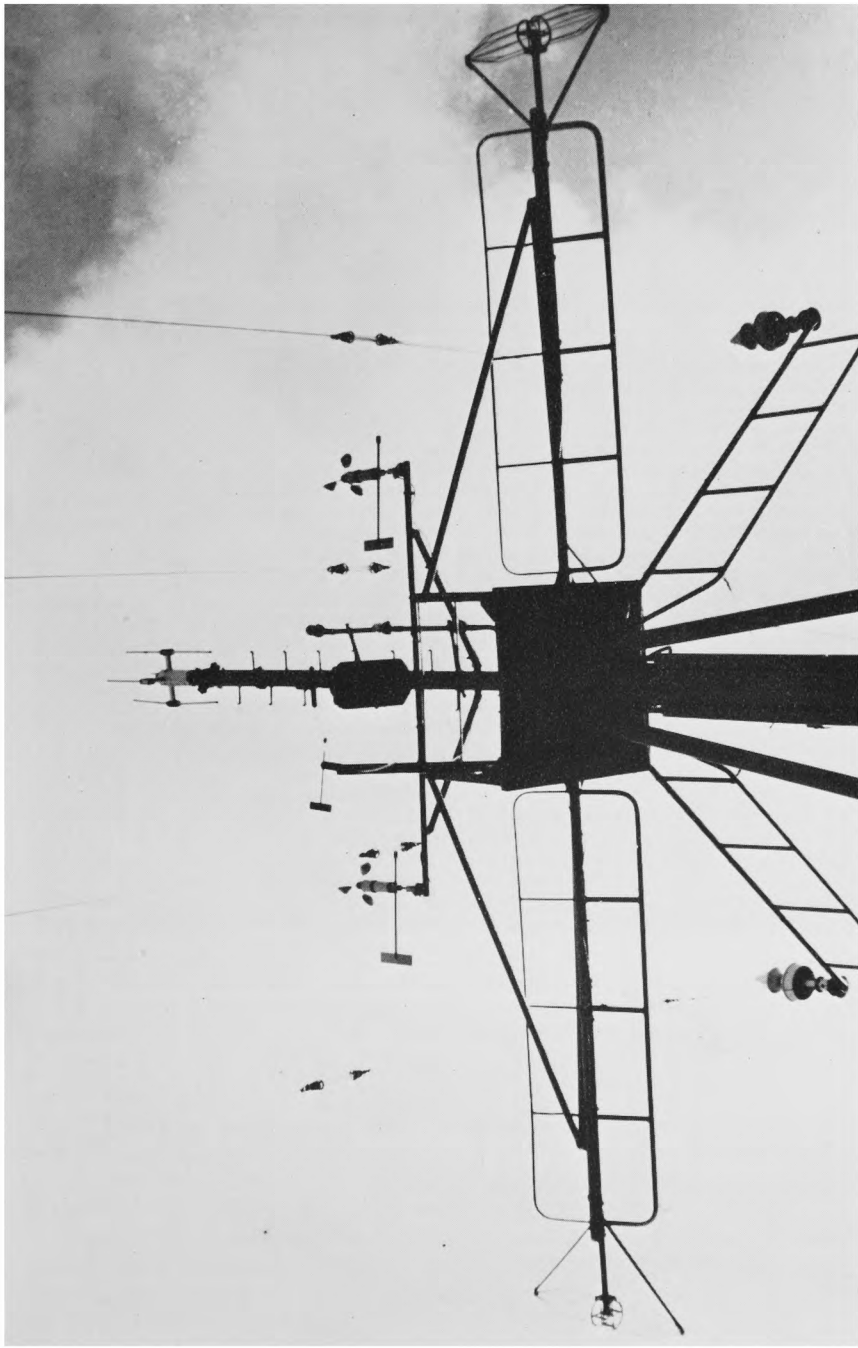


Photo by W. R. Yule

FIG. 14. Cup generator anemometers and wind vanes in an Ocean Weather Ship

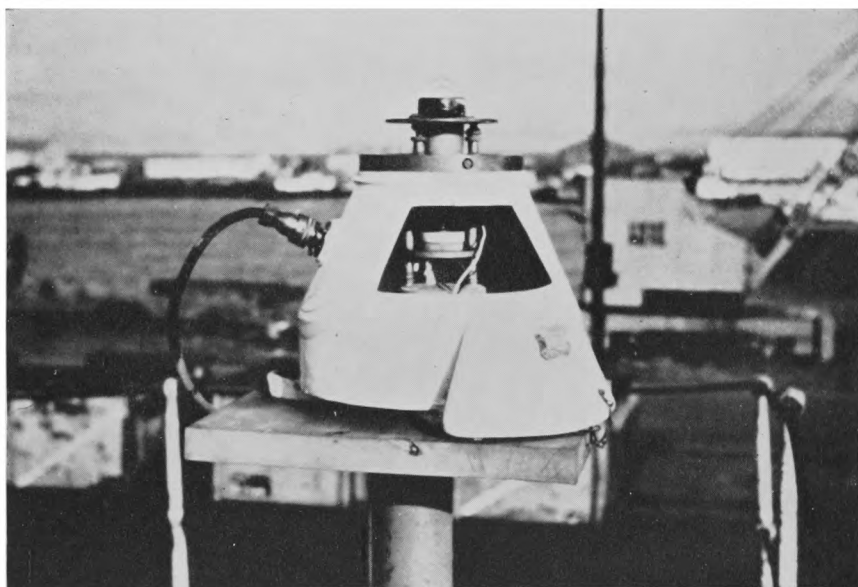


FIG. 15. Solarimeter on board an Ocean Weather Ship. The front of the mounting is open and shows the silica gel container connected by a tube to the solarimeter. The pendulum part of the gimbal mounting is also seen below. The white horizontal guard plate (12 inches diameter), which is normally fitted around the solarimeter in the plane of the base of the glass dome, has been removed for the purpose of this photograph.

- (3) It must not be exposed to suddenly varying conditions of temperature due to causes within the ship, such as draughts of air from boilers, engine room, etc.
- (4) The lighting should not be such as to cause a glare on the glass surface of the barometer tube. The light should come from behind or from the side of the observer.

Setting up the barometer. The mercury barometer is supported so that it swings in gimbals and therefore tends to remain vertical when the ship is rolling. In order to give the instrument room to swing, it is supported by a suspension arm, hinged at one end. The hinged end can either be screwed to a bulkhead or shipped into a socket screwed to a bulkhead. The height of the suspension arm should be such that the top of the mercury at its highest probable position is just below the height of the eye of an average observer. A barometer that is too high is almost certain to cause errors of parallax. (See Fig. 18.)

The socket having been screwed to the bulkhead, the instrument should be carefully lifted, the hinged part of the suspension arm bent back at right angles and shipped into the socket so that the longer portion of the suspension arm is horizontal. The mercury should then fall gradually and the instrument will be ready for observation in about two hours; this also allows time for the instrument to take up the temperature of its surroundings. Sometimes in a new tube the mercury does not readily quit the top of the tube. If, after an hour or so, the mercury has not descended, tap the cistern end rather sharply, or make the instrument swing a little in its gimbals, which should cause the mercury to fall in the tube. If this method does not succeed, the force of the tap must be slightly increased, but undue violence must not be used.

Fig. 4 shows a marine barometer (a) housed in its case when in harbour and (b) in sea position. The case should be firmly secured to the bulkhead. The socket is screwed near the bottom of the case and a clip "A" is provided to hold the barometer in its housed position when in port. (Note.—the short screws holding the socket in the box are insufficient to hold the weight of the barometer when in the sea position. These short screws should be replaced by longer ones, at least $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch, screwed through the socket and box, and into the bulkhead.) A hook should be fitted to secure the lid open while at sea.

Taking down the barometer. Whenever a barometer has to be unshipped and placed in its box, first lift the instrument out of its socket and bring it gradually into an inclined position to allow the mercury to flow very gently up to the top of the glass tube, avoiding any sudden movement which would cause the mercury to strike the top of the tube with violence. The absence of air in the tube makes the force of the blow little different from that of a solid rod of metal, so that it might break the tube. The barometer should then be taken lengthwise and laid in its box. To be carried with safety it should be held with the cistern end upwards or lying flat and it must on no account be subject to jars or concussions, which might cause air to find its way into the upper end of the tube, even if they did not damage the instrument.

Care of the barometer. The barometer should be kept clean and dry. The gimal screws should be examined occasionally, as they are usually made of brass and in the course of time may wear through, owing to the movement of the instrument at sea, particularly in small ships. Dust, particularly on the correction slide, should be removed by gently brushing the instrument with a camel-hair brush or a soft cloth. Metal polish should *never* be applied. A very little clock oil or log oil may occasionally be used for lubrication.

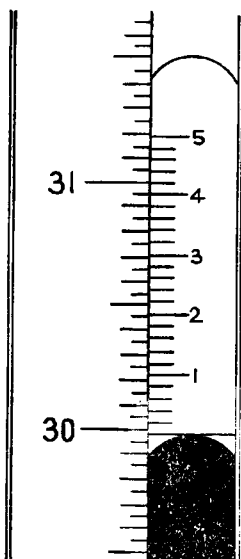
If the rack and pinion of the correction slide become very stiff they may be overhauled as follows. Remove the slide from the barometer and place it face downward. A small brass block securing the pinion in position will then be seen. Remove this by taking out the four screws. Wipe the pinion and its bearing with a soft rag to remove dirt and old oil; apply a little fresh clock oil. Now remove the four small screws, two at each end of the rack. The slider can then be taken out. Wipe off all dirt and old oil from the rack and bearing surfaces. Put a drop of fresh clock oil on the rack and on the back of the slider. Re-assemble, taking care to see that the pinion is properly engaged in the rack before tightening the screws. The slider should then move up and down quite smoothly.

The screws which secure the latitude scales should not be touched during this operation.

READING THE MERCURY BAROMETER

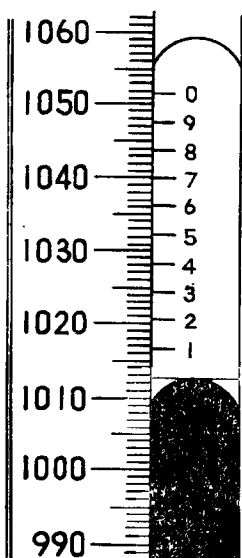
Temperature of the instrument. This is read to the nearest whole degree on the scale of the attached thermometer. The observation should be made immediately on reaching the instrument in order that the thermometer should be affected as little as possible by bodily heat radiated from the observer.

Height of the mercury column. After the temperature of the barometer has been read, the barometer may be touched with the hand, but care should be taken to do this as lightly as possible. Tap gently with the finger until the tapping no longer affects the shape of the mercury surface in the tube. Turn the milled head at the side of the instrument until the lower edge of the vernier and the lower edge of the sliding piece at the back of the instrument, which moves with



Reading 29.990 in.

FIG. 16.



Reading 1012.7mb

FIG. 17.

the vernier, when in line, appear just to touch the uppermost part of the domed surface of the mercury.

A white background, e.g. a piece of white paper placed behind the instrument, is an advantage. An electric torch can be used to illuminate the background but do not use a naked light as this may lead to an inaccurate setting.

If the mercury is not perfectly pure, it may happen that, when the barometer is falling, the top of the mercury column no longer shows a domed (convex) surface. The surface may be flat or even concave. The exact setting of the vernier is much more difficult under these conditions. The observer should move the vernier slowly downwards, keeping its lower edge and the lower edge of the sliding piece at the back in line as well as he can, till the white background just disappears at the centre of the tube. He should then move his eye a little up and down to make sure that the white background still remains invisible at the centre of the tube, before he takes the reading. In this case a bright white background, for example a piece of white paper held behind the top of the mercury column, is almost essential.

Figs. 16 and 17 illustrate the process of reading the vernier, which is done in the same way as that of a sextant. Fig. 16 shows an inch barometer, the reading being 29.990 inches, while Fig. 17 shows a millibar barometer, the reading being 1012.7 millibars.

Accuracy of reading. It is important that barometer readings for transmission by radio or for entry in a meteorological logbook be carefully made. An erroneous pressure reading may considerably mislead a forecaster, and the error may have serious consequences for ships at sea, particularly in tropical storm areas. Some possible sources of error are shown below.

ERROR DUE TO THE CORRECTION SLIDE BEING IMPROPERLY SET. In all cases the correction slide (*see* page 8) should be reset before reading the barometer. This is particularly important where the ship is changing her latitude.

ERRORS DUE TO PARALLAX. If the eye is not in line with both the bottom of the vernier and the sliding piece at the back, the reading will be incorrect owing to errors of parallax. Whether the eye is too high or too low, the reading will be too high. If the eye is too high, only the front of the vernier can be seen and this will be in line with the top of the mercury column and the eye. If the eye is too low, the sliding piece at the back of the vernier will be in line with the top of the mercury column and the eye, the lower front edge of the vernier being indistinguishable. (*See* Fig. 18.)

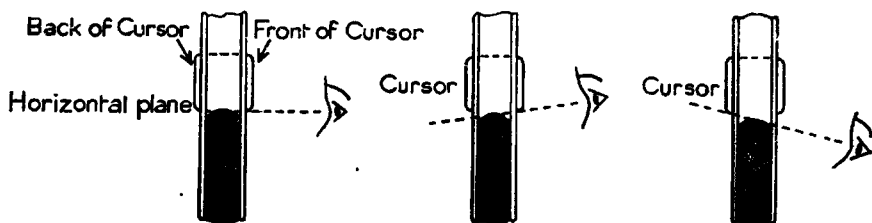


FIG. 18

Correct position of the observer
The eye of the observer and the lower edges of the front and back of the cursor are all in a horizontal plane tangent to the meniscus.

Incorrect positions of the observer
In neither case is the eye of the observer in the horizontal plane tangent to the meniscus, and the result in both cases is too high a reading.

ERRORS IN READING THE MAIN SCALE. The simplest error that can be made in reading the barometer is that of making an actual mistake of 10 mb or 1 mb, .05 inch or .10 inch; such an error is usually due to making a mistake in counting the number of divisions on the fixed scale. The only means of guarding against such errors is care. After a reading has been logged it should be checked to make sure that no misreading has been made. In making the first reading, attention should be concentrated on the accuracy of the last figure (tenths of a millibar or thousandths of an inch); in the check reading attention should be concentrated on the figures of higher value.

ERROR DUE TO WIND. It has been found that strong winds, blowing near the barometer, may affect the indicated pressure. When such winds are blowing during an observation, therefore, the doors of the charthouse in which the barometer is hung should be kept closed. This applies just as much to the lee door as to the weather door.

ERROR DUE TO CHANGE OF DRAUGHT. A change in height above the water-line after loading or unloading, is sometimes overlooked. In some ships the difference in pressure readings between the light and loaded draught could approach 1.5 mb.

ERRORS DUE TO PUMPING. When a ship is in a seaway, the mercury of the barometer may oscillate up and down in the barometer tube. This is termed "pumping" and is due to the following causes:—

- (a) Oscillations of the mercury caused by the pitching and rolling of the ship.
- (b) Oscillations caused by the swinging of the instrument about its point of support.
- (c) The effect of wind gusts on the air pressure of the room in which the barometer is hung.
- (d) Variations of atmospheric pressure caused by the change of height of the ship due to her vertical motion on the waves.

The mean reading should be recorded, to obtain which the vernier should be set by eye midway between the highest and lowest positions of the mercury column. The pumping is often very irregular, and in order to get an accurate mean the observer is advised to take three pairs of readings, one of each pair being the highest reading obtainable and the other the lowest. The result recorded is the mean of the whole set. Thus, if observations obtained were as follows:—

<i>Highest Reading</i>			<i>Lowest Reading</i>		
1007.6 mb	1006.5 mb	
1007.5 mb	1006.6 mb	
1007.7 mb	1006.6 mb	

the mean reading would be 1007.1 mb.

THE ANEROID BAROMETER

The aneroid barometer consists of a circular metallic chamber exhausted of air and hermetically sealed. Variations of atmospheric pressure produce variations in the dimensions of the vacuum chamber and these changes are magnified mechanically, optically or electrically so that the atmospheric pressure may be read on a convenient scale. The principle of the aneroid barometer was first suggested in 1698 but no useful instrument was constructed until 1843.

The majority of aneroid barometers indicate the pressure by means of a pointer which rotates around a graduated dial. The vacuum chamber, usually called the aneroid capsule, has to provide the force needed to move the pointer and this prevents it from responding freely to pressure variations. This type of instrument is useful in showing pressure changes and some of the better quality instruments are suitable for all pressure readings. The aneroid has the advantage that, unlike the mercurial barometer, it does not suffer from "pumping" although it does rise and fall slightly with change of height of the ship in the waves of a seaway.

Precision aneroid barometer. The Meteorological Office has now adopted, as its standard instrument for use at sea, a type of precision aneroid barometer in which the force required to operate the indicating mechanism is provided by the observer, allowing the capsule to respond freely to pressure changes. The sensing element is a stack of three disc-type aneroid capsules fixed to the inside wall of a cast metal box. Some magnification of the capsule movement is provided by a lever, pivotted on jewelled bearings. One end of the lever is kept in contact with the capsule by means of a light hairspring and a micrometer screw, which extends through the case and actuates a digital counter, is brought into contact with the other end of the lever by the observer. Contact is indicated by a small cathode-ray tube; a continuous line of light indicates that contact is made and a broken line of light indicates that the circuit is broken. When the micrometer screw is set so that the contact is just broken the digital counter indicates the pressure in millibars and tenths. The box containing the aneroid capsules is completely air-tight except for one hole, and that orifice is fitted with a damping device which restricts the response of the instrument to the rapid pressure variations caused by the rise and fall of a ship. Two types of digital aneroid barometer are issued to U.K. voluntary observing ships, the Precision Aneroid Barometer Mk 1 and the Precision Aneroid Barometer Mk 2. The two instruments are identical in the features affecting their accuracy but, as can be seen in Figures 6 and 7, they differ considerably in appearance.

Full details of installation and maintenance are issued with these instruments and further copies of those instructions may be obtained from the Meteorological Office.

Corrections to aneroid readings. Aneroid barometers of good quality are compensated, by the manufacturers, for such changes in temperature as they are likely to experience, either by leaving a calculated small amount of air in the vacuum chamber, or by the use of a bi-metallic lever. Such aneroids, therefore, do not require correcting for temperature. No aneroids require correcting for latitude, as the principle on which they are based is the balancing of atmospheric pressure by the elasticity of metal, so that the force of gravity does not come into the picture. The only corrections which should be applied to an aneroid reading are those for altitude (see Tables 10 and 11) and where necessary for index error.

Precautions necessary with an aneroid barometer. The instrument should be placed where it is not liable to sudden jars which may alter its index correction and where the sun cannot shine directly on to it. Dial aneroids should be tapped gently before a reading is taken as the pointer is liable to stick. This is not necessary with the digital precision aneroids.

All aneroids require careful comparisons with barometers whose accuracy can be relied on, as changes in the elasticity of the metal of which the vacuum chamber is composed may cause appreciable variations in the index correction.

Such changes are rare in good quality instruments. Every opportunity should be taken, when the vessel is in harbour, of making a comparison with a reliable barometer. Comparisons against a mercury barometer while the ship is at sea are not likely to be satisfactory as the readings of a mercury barometer on a rolling ship cannot be considered as reliable for this purpose.

All Port Meteorological Officers and Merchant Navy Agents and many harbour and mercantile marine offices have a standard barometer which is available for such comparisons. A record should be kept of all barometer comparisons; this will be useful in assessing the reliability of the instrument and the correction to be applied to dial aneroids when at sea.

Adjustment of aneroid readings. The reading of a dial aneroid may be corrected, if desired, by means of the adjusting screw at the back. Whenever such an alteration of the index correction is made, the fact should be noted, with the date. Such adjustments should, however, only be made if the index correction becomes too great, small changes in the index error of the instrument should be allowed for by altering the correction to the applied readings. No attempt should be made to alter the setting of the Meteorological Office digital Precision Aneroid Barometer.

THE BAROGRAPH

A typical barograph is shown in Fig. 5. It is constructed on exactly the same principle as the aneroid barometer, but records its readings by the movement of a pen over a suitable chart.

To increase the movement through which the pen travels in response to pressure changes, the vacuum chamber takes the form either of a number of individual capsules or one large chamber with corrugated walls. The bottom of this vacuum chamber is anchored to the instrument base while the top is connected to the pen arm through a series of levers which still further magnify the movement by pressure changes and which can be arranged to compensate for temperature changes. The variation of volume of the vacuum chamber is thus translated into a vertical movement of the pen arm. This pen arm carries a pen filled with special ink and pressure changes are presented as a mark on a chart attached to a clockwork-operated drum. This pressure is recorded as a continuous line whose height at any point represents the pressure at the time it was recorded. This record is known as a barogram.

The barograph is a valuable adjunct to the barometer aboard ship in providing a continuous record of atmospheric pressure between the times at which the barometer was read.

The barograph is not a precision instrument and should never be used as an alternative to the barometer for measuring atmospheric pressure at fixed times. Its advantage is that it provides a graphical record of fluctuations of pressure, together with the times at which they occur, such as the moment of passing of a line squall and its readings are valuable to the meteorologist and to the mariner for various practical purposes.

The open-scale barograph. Barographs may be made in various scales of size, the smaller being more convenient when space is limited. In such smaller instruments the vacuum chamber and the clock drum are themselves smaller, and the pressure changes recorded on the chart are of a correspondingly reduced scale. To report barometric tendencies with the accuracy required for synoptic meteorological observations, it is desirable that larger, and hence more open

scaled barographs be used. Records from such barographs, when carried on board ships, may however be unsatisfactory because, due to their greater sensitivity, the trace is not a fine line but a ribbon of appreciable width, resulting from vibration, pressure changes from gusts of wind and from the movement of the ship. Because of this, an oil-damped open-scale barograph (Meteorological Office Marine Mk 2) is used aboard British Selected Ships. In this instrument the vacuum chamber is contained in a brass cylinder filled with oil which, to compensate for changes of volume of the vacuum chamber, must pass through a small orifice. In this way short-time period changes are damped out and only the major persistent changes shown on the chart. As a further precaution against vibration the instrument is mounted on rubber pads.

Care of the barograph. The barograph is a delicate instrument and must be handled carefully. Friction between the working parts of the apparatus must be avoided as far as possible. The bearings should be cleaned occasionally and oiled with good clock oil, care being taken to remove excess of oil.

Friction occurs between the pen nib and the paper on which it writes. The pressure of the pen nib on the paper should be reduced to the minimum consistent with a continuous trace; this pressure should be tested from time to time.

In the open-scale barograph now in use the pen arm which carries the pen nib is suspended like a gate and it is so arranged that the slope of the gate bearings is adjustable. It is thus possible to regulate the pressure of the pen nib on the chart. In Fig 5, A denotes the gate suspension which is suitably adjusted before issue.

Excess of ink in the pen nib should be avoided. Do not let ink come in contact with the metal pen arm which carries the pen nib as this will cause the pen to adhere firmly to the pen arm so that it cannot be removed and cleaned. The ink may also cause the metal to become brittle and break. Should the pen arm become inked, it should be washed and slightly oiled. A thin, clear trace on the chart should be aimed at. The pen nib should be washed from time to time in water or methylated spirit. The point of the pen nib should be fine, so as to give a narrow trace, but it must not be so fine as to scratch or stick to the paper. A new pen nib may be improved by drawing the point once or twice along an oil stone, but any oil should afterwards be removed. The pen nib should be filled with ink weekly, using the ink-bottle and filler supplied.

The barograph, when used on board ship, should be located in a position where it will be least affected by concussion, vibration or movement of the ship.

Setting of the barograph. The barograph is set to give the correct reading by comparison with the reading of the mercury barometer, after the latter has been corrected by means of the correction slide or the tables at the end of this book.

In the type of barograph shown in Fig. 5, the setting is made by adjusting the height of the fulcrum of the principal lever B by means of the milled head screw C on the central bridge. In other instruments the adjustment is made by raising or lowering the point in the base plate to which the lowest of the set of aneroid boxes is fixed. This is done by means of a milled-head screw on the base plate near the aneroid boxes.

Standardizing the barograph. Like the aneroid barometer, and for the same reason (the possibility of changes in the elasticity of the metal of which the vacuum boxes are composed), the readings of the barograph should be compared at least once a week with those of a mercury barometer, duly corrected.

The most suitable time is when the weekly chart is changed, and the reading of the barometer, together with the date and Greenwich Mean Time, should be entered up on the chart. If the ship does not carry a mercury barometer, every other opportunity of making such a comparison should be taken.

Adjustments to the barograph should not be made too frequently, but only if its readings become appreciably different from those of the barometer, and a note of the adjustment should be made on the chart, giving time and date.

The barograph clock and chart. The barograph may be fitted with various clocks which will rotate a drum quickly or slowly as desired, round which the chart is fixed. For many applications a rotation in 24 hours will be necessary to show up the small-scale features of pressure changes but, for most uses at sea, the clock chosen will rotate once per week. The chart must therefore be changed weekly, the clock being wound at the same time. Before removing the chart from a small barograph the pen arm must first be moved away from the chart by means of the lever provided. On open-scale barographs the pen arm automatically lifts off the chart when the lid is lifted. Before the new chart is put on the drum, the date and time should be entered on it in pencil. Time marks should be made each day at 1200 Greenwich Mean Time and just before the chart is removed, the times being entered on the chart, for the purpose of correcting the time scale should the barograph clock run fast or slow. The barograph should be kept to Greenwich Mean Time throughout the voyage. For the purpose of making time marks, barographs have a small button on the outer case which, when depressed, acts on a rubber roller (D in Fig. 5), which slightly moves the pen arm vertically.

Before fixing the chart on the drum, the latter must first be lifted from the clock by removing the key and unscrewing the milled nut which holds the drum in place. The chart is then placed round the drum where it is held in position by two short spring clips that hold its bottom and top edges. When fixing on the drum, care must be taken that the horizontal lines printed on the chart are parallel to the flange at the base of the drum. As the length of the chart is slightly greater than the circumference of the drum, there is some overlap when the chart is put on the drum. The last portion of the chart should come on top of the first portion, so that if the chart is not changed at the end of seven days, the pen will not catch on the edge of the chart and tear it, or damage itself.

The drum is then replaced on the clock and the whole is rotated till the pen records the correct Greenwich Mean Time. In order to avoid time errors that might be caused by backlash in the teeth of the clock gears, the final movement of the drum, when setting it, should be in the opposite direction to that in which it normally rotates.

THE CHANGE OR TENDENCY OF THE BAROMETER

The change or tendency of the barometer, always a valuable observation to seamen, is also of considerable value to the forecaster.

The barometric tendency, by international usage, is defined as the change in the barometric pressure in the last three hours. It is required in radio weather messages and is read off from the barograph. The position of the pen on the chart at the time of observation, and the reading of the trace three hours earlier, should be noted, if possible to the tenth of a millibar. The difference between these two readings will give the tendency. It should not be taken as the difference between two readings on the barometer, but should always be read off from the

barograph, since the barograph method is less liable to error, and anyway the barometer is not customarily read every three hours at sea. Also, mistakes in reading a barograph are more likely to be detected, owing to the continuous availability of the trace.

It is essential that the barograph trace should be fine and sensitive, with the instrument free from mechanical faults such as sticking, and as far as possible not vitiated by the effects of vibration, or of unequal heating due to sunshine or nearby sources of heat.

Allowance for course and speed. To estimate the true tendency of the barometer reported from a ship under way, a meteorological service needs to allow for course and speed, and, therefore, in a ship's weather message provision is made for reporting the course and speed of the ship. This allowance for the course and speed of the ship should *not* be made by the observer on board ship when reporting tendency in a weather message; it is made as a matter of routine at the meteorological office ashore when the observations are plotted.

The characteristic of the barometric tendency. This is the name given to the coded description of the nature of the changes the pressure has undergone in the last three hours. It is generally required in ships' wireless reports, and is read off from the barograph trace. The diagrams in Fig. 19 show the various pressure changes that might have to be reported, together with the code figures to be used in reporting them.

The codes to be used in reporting the barometric tendency and characteristic are given, with other codes, in the *Ships' Code and Decode Book* (Met. O. 509) and in the *Admiralty List of Radio Signals*, Vol. 3.










Code Figure	Trace	Description of Curve	Pressure now, compared with 3 hours ago
0		Rising, then falling Rising, then falling	The same Higher
1		Rising, then steady Rising, then rising more slowly	Higher
2		Rising, (steadily or unsteadily)	
3		Falling, then rising Steady, then rising Rising, then rising more quickly	Higher
4		Steady	
5		Falling, then rising Falling, then rising	The same Lower
6		Falling, then steady Falling, then falling more slowly	Lower
7		Falling (steadily or unsteadily)	
8		Steady, then falling Rising, then falling Falling, then falling more quickly	Lower

FIG. 19. Code numbers used to indicate the characteristic of barometric tendency

The diurnal variation in the pressure. Superposed upon its irregular variations due to changes in the weather, the barometric pressure has a regular rise and fall twice a day, the maximum values occurring at about 10 and 22 hours and the minimum values at about 4 and 16 hours, local time. In temperate regions the amplitude of these diurnal variations is comparatively small, so that they are usually lost in the much greater irregular variations of these regions, but nearer the tropics, the amplitude of the diurnal variation increases and the magnitude of other changes in general decreases, so that the diurnal variations become very marked and can be clearly seen, day after day, on a barograph chart. In these regions, therefore, barometric changes do not indicate changes in the weather, unless they remain considerable *after the diurnal variation has been discounted*.

Tables have been prepared for the Atlantic, Pacific and Indian Oceans, between latitudes 0° and 20°, N or S, showing the corrections for diurnal variation to be applied to the observed pressure to reduce it to the mean for the day, and the average values of the barometric change in an hour, throughout the day, due to the diurnal variation. These tables are given in the Monthly Meteorological Charts (*see* page 118) for the Atlantic, Western and Eastern Pacific and the Indian Ocean and also in the meteorological text of the appropriate Admiralty sailing directions. Corresponding figures do not differ greatly from one ocean to another or between north and south latitudes and have been averaged in this handbook to give values that will be approximately correct in any ocean for the two bands of latitude 0°–10°, N or S, and 10°–20°, N or S. These values are shown in Tables 12 and 13 (*see also* Fig. 20). In the tropics, should the barometer, after correction for diurnal variation (Table 12) be as much as 3 millibars (approximately 0.1 inch) below the monthly normal for the locality, the mariner should be on the alert, as there is a distinct possibility that a tropical storm has formed, or is forming. A comparison of subsequent hourly changes in his barometer with the corresponding figures in Table 13, will show whether these changes indicate a real further fall in pressure and, if so, its amount.

When the observer on board ship is reporting barometric tendency, or entering it up in his log, he should not correct it for changes due to normal diurnal variation. This correction, like the correction for course and speed of the ship, is made, if necessary, as a matter of routine by the meteorological office receiving the observations.

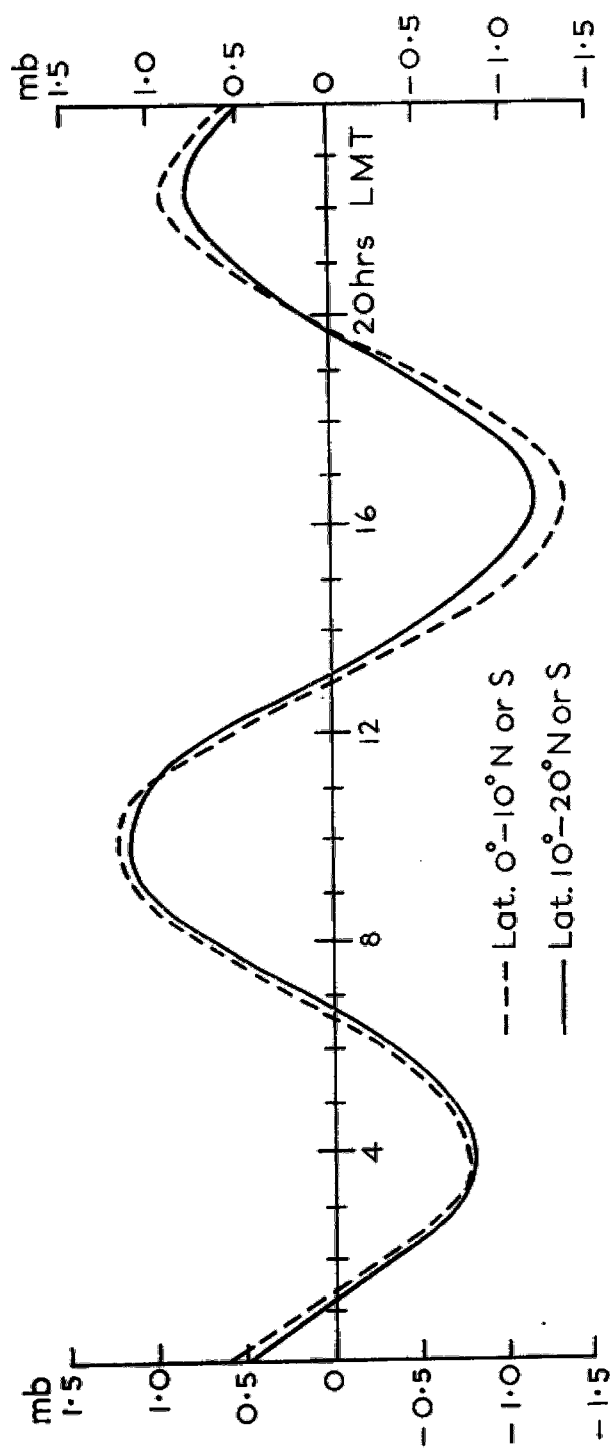


Fig. 20. Mean diurnal variation of pressure

CHAPTER 2

The Measurement of Temperature and Humidity

The temperatures normally measured at sea for meteorology are those of the air, at the height of the bridge, and of the sea, just below its surface, Humidity, i.e. a measure of the evaporated water contained in the air, is also required, but as this is obtained by similar instrumentation, it is included under the same general heading.

Thermometers. Any device which measures temperature is a thermometer. There is a wide range of physical phenomena related to temperature, almost any one of which may be used as a thermometer but the two which will be most frequently encountered are based on the expansion of a suitable substance with increased temperature and, similarly, the change of electrical resistance in a conductor. The simplest, cheapest and most commonly encountered device is the liquid-in-glass thermometer, the liquid employed being mercury or alcohol. Such a thermometer consists of a glass tube of very fine bore, at the end of which a bulb has been blown to act as a reservoir. The whole of the tube and bulb is filled with the chosen liquid at a high temperature and the open end of the tube is then sealed. On cooling, the liquid will contract until the tube is only partly filled by liquid, the exact point reached by the liquid being a measure of the temperature of the thermometer, and hence, under suitable conditions, of its surroundings, at any given moment. A scale may now be engraved on the tube, or thermometer stem, to allow actual temperature to be read.

The thermometer was invented at approximately the same time as the barometer. Galileo made a crude kind of thermometer in which the liquid was open to the air. True thermometers were first brought into general use by the Grand Duke Ferdinand II of Tuscany who is said to have possessed such instruments in 1654. The liquid used in these early thermometers was alcohol.

While mercury is the most satisfactory liquid for general thermometric use, thermometers intended for very cold climates contain pure alcohol. The reason for this is that mercury would solidify at the low temperatures of polar regions. Mercury freezes at about -39°C (-38°F) while alcohol freezes only at -130°C (-202°F), though it becomes a thick liquid and therefore useless for thermometric purposes at -90°C (-130°F).

Thermometers employing the electrical change of resistance due to temperature give no direct visual indication but must be placed in an electrical circuit which will enable the resistance and hence, from previous calibration, the temperature, to be measured. Such thermometers usually are constructed from a length of fine wire, drawn from a material such as platinum, tungsten, etc., which is easily ductable and will not corrode with time. For meteorological use, a spool of such wire is permanently enclosed in a small diameter metal cylinder, for protection.

Graduation of thermometers. The earliest known graduation of a thermometer was that made in 1701 by Sir Isaac Newton, who divided the range of temperature between the freezing point of water and the temperature of the human body into twelve degrees.

The principle of thermometric graduation is as follows. The temperature

at which pure ice melts is always the same and pure water boils always at the same temperature under a given atmospheric pressure. The position of the mercury in the tube is marked for each of these temperatures and the interval between the marks can then be divided into a number of equal degrees. There are four systems of graduation now in use, in all of which the boiling point of water is taken as the temperature at which water boils under a standard atmospheric pressure, corresponding to a barometer reading of 1013 mb or 29.92 inches of mercury. The scales which will be most frequently encountered are:

THE CELSIUS (formerly CENTIGRADE) SCALE. In 1742 Anders Celsius devised a scale in which the freezing point of pure water was described as 100° and the boiling point as 0°. The present Celsius scale is now identical with this except that the figures are reversed, the freezing point being 0°C and the boiling point 100°C. In addition, the conditions under which the temperature of water, whether freezing or boiling, was measured have been more carefully defined, particularly in regard to changes of atmospheric pressure.

Under arrangements made by the World Meteorological Organization the Celsius scale is now the official scale for measurement of all meteorological temperatures and is also widely used for this purpose ashore, except in North America where the Fahrenheit scale is still in use. Celsius is now used for meteorological purposes aboard the Voluntary Observing ships of many countries and is being introduced aboard British ships as stocks of Celsius thermometers become available.

THE FAHRENHEIT SCALE. Gabriel Fahrenheit (1686–1736) was the first to devise a graduated scale with a fixed number of divisions between two fixed points: he was also the first to use mercury as a thermometer substance. On his scale zero was taken to be the temperature of an ice and salt mixture and 100° the temperature of the human body. The freezing point of water was marked 32° and the boiling point 212° and these were later used as fixed points on the Fahrenheit scale after their constancy and easy reproducibility had been established. This scale is still widely used and remains the meteorological temperature unit in certain countries, although it is steadily being replaced by Celsius.

THE ABSOLUTE (or KELVIN) SCALE. This scale is, in effect, a downward extension of the Celsius scale, and the term "Absolute" is, in fact, a misnomer. It can be shown theoretically that when a substance contains no heat at all, its temperature will correspond to -273°C , below which lower temperatures are impossible. It thus avoids the use of negative temperatures and has scientific advantages in indicating the actual amount of heat in a body, if the Celsius scale is moved bodily downwards, to make $-273^{\circ}\text{Celsius}$ equal 0°Absolute or Kelvin, the individual degree unit being unchanged. Thus the freezing point of water, 0°C , becomes 273°A or $^{\circ}\text{K}$, while boiling water, 100°C , becomes 373°A or $^{\circ}\text{K}$.

Conversion of thermometer scales. To convert Celsius readings to Fahrenheit use the following rule:—Multiply by $9/5$ and add 32. Similarly, to convert from Fahrenheit to Celsius, subtract 32 and multiply by $5/9$. From Fahrenheit to Absolute, proceed as for Celsius and add 273. Table 19 gives the values on the Celsius and Absolute scales corresponding to each degree Fahrenheit, from 0°F to 119°F .

Scale markings. Thermometer scales can take various forms. As the liquid-in-glass thermometer is particularly fragile, it is usually protected in some way

or other, and the scale is often incorporated in this protection. In the standard Meteorological Office sheathed thermometer (Fig. 8a) the scale is engraved directly upon the thermometer stem, the back being whitened to allow easy reading. The thermometer stem is then enclosed in an outer glass tube, which adds to the strength of the whole and protects the scale from erosion. In this case the thermometer is therefore read through the outer glass tube. In other instances the basic glass thermometer is partially enclosed with a wood and metal protecting frame, to which is attached a separate scale, engraved on a flat white surface. In such cases the thermometer itself will carry a more simple scale, without numbers to indicate the true temperature. This is done to ensure that the thermometer has not moved with respect to the fully-engraved scale, and this point should be frequently inspected when such thermometers, now rather obsolescent, are used.

Electrical thermometers are usually read by dial and pointer, the pointer either being operated by the resistance thermometer electrical circuits or by manually setting to achieve a prescribed effect—the “zeroing” of a secondary pointer, or by the lighting or extinction of electric lamps.

Reading the thermometer. The thermometer should be read with care. Though the Fahrenheit scale is graduated only to whole degrees,* the reading on both Celsius and Fahrenheit thermometers should be given by estimation to the nearest tenth of a degree. This is not only necessary for general accuracy but also for practical reasons, i.e., the computation of relative humidity and the dew-point (*see* page 26), and the determination of the difference between air and sea surface temperatures. In some coded radio weather messages, however, the temperature is required only to the nearest degree.

When reading a thermometer, care should be taken to keep the eye at the same level as the end of the column, otherwise there will be an error due to parallax.

The mercury column of a thermometer occasionally separates in one or more places. The thermometers should therefore be examined before each observation to see if the column is continuous. If there is any break in the column, take the instrument down, swing it briskly at arm's length with the bulb end away from you till the column is again continuous, and replace it. After this, give the thermometers another 10 minutes to pick up the correct temperatures again, before taking the observation. With the alcohol-in-glass thermometer some alcohol may flow into the upper end of the tube unless the thermometer is stored with the bulb end downwards.

Thermometers should be kept clean. In damp weather any moisture should be removed from the dry bulb a little while before taking the reading. The graduations on the glass of mounted thermometers may in time become indistinct. Since the marks are cut in the glass, a rub with an ordinary lead pencil, or a wipe over with Indian ink, will make the graduations clear again.

For all types of liquid-in-glass thermometer it is best always to store in a vertical or near vertical position and never with the bulb higher than the end of the stem. In consequence a spare thermometer is most conveniently retained in its box, which can be conveniently located in a rack or a clip which will hold it in a vertical position.

*Ships' Celsius thermometers will be graduated in half degrees.

THE DRY- AND WET-BULB THERMOMETERS

An instrument for measuring the humidity of the air is called a hygrometer. There are several kinds of hygrometers, but the form in common use, the dry- and wet-bulb thermometers, also known as Mason's hygrometer or a psychrometer, is the simplest and is described below.

Of the two thermometers contained in the thermometer screen, no more need be said of the dry-bulb for measuring air temperature, beyond ensuring that it is secured firmly into position into one of the two sets of clips provided. The operation and attention to the wet-bulb thermometer requires a little further description.

Operation of a wet-bulb thermometer. The evaporation of water requires heat, the "latent heat of evaporation". This is derived from the surroundings—the air, the water itself and/or from the thermometer used for the measurement. The faster the evaporation the greater the demand for latent heat and hence the greater will be the cooling of the surroundings. However, the rate of evaporation under any particular circumstance will be determined by the dryness of the surrounding air, the air temperature and the rate at which air flows past the thermometer. A measure of humidity, i.e. the degree of dryness or wetness of the air, can thus be obtained by wetting a thermometer and noting the degree to which it is cooled. In practice it is both inconvenient and unnecessary to wet the whole thermometer—wetting the bulb alone will suffice. The bulb itself is thus enclosed in a small muslin bag, tied on by means of a wick, the other end of which is placed in a small water container placed beside the thermometer. Capillary action will then ensure that the muslin is kept wet, and the cooling action of evaporation can then be measured by reading, firstly, the dry-bulb thermometer, then the wet-bulb thermometer and by subtraction, the difference, the "wet-bulb depression". The third requirement is knowledge of the rate of the air flow. A value has been assumed so that, from the air temperature and wet-bulb depression, a reasonably correct measure of humidity may be obtained from the tables provided. This combination of a dry- and wet-bulb thermometer is known as a psychrometer.

Air can contain only a limited amount of evaporated water, according to its temperature. When this point is reached, no further evaporation will take place and the wet-bulb thermometer will read the same as the dry-bulb thermometer. The air is then said to be saturated. If the air becomes drier, the rate of evaporation increases and the wet-bulb temperature falls. The depression of the wet-bulb can reach over 20°C (36°F) in a hot dry climate, such as that of Khartoum during part of the year. It sometimes amounts to 10°C (18°F) in England, but at sea the difference seldom reaches 5°C (9°F). When the humidity of the atmosphere is high, during or just before or after rain, when fog is prevalent, or when dew is forming, there is little or no evaporation and the two thermometers give the same, or very nearly the same reading.

We may sum up the facts about humidity and the dry- and wet-bulb thermometers as under:

Humidity. Evaporation.

High	...	Weak	...	Dry and wet bulbs read almost the same.
Low	...	Intense	...	Wet bulb reads much lower than dry.

Muslin and wick for wet bulbs. The wet-bulb thermometer needs careful attention in order to get correct readings. The bulb of this thermometer should be covered with a single thickness of thin *clean* muslin or cambric, which is kept moist by attaching to it a few threads of darning cotton dipping into the small reservoir of water placed near it.

From the muslin provided, a small piece should be cut, sufficient to cover the bulb, and should be stretched smoothly over it, creases being avoided as far as possible. The muslin is kept in place by attaching the cotton wick in the following way. Take a round turn in the wick, with the strands middled on the bight, and pass the ends through the bight, forming a round turn and cow hitch. Any superfluous muslin or loose ends should then be trimmed off (Fig. 21a).

Muslin caps ready threaded with cotton are sometimes supplied. These are slipped over the bulb, and the thread is then pulled tight and tied (Fig. 21b). The strands should be long enough to reach two or three inches below the lowest part of the bulb, in order that their lower ends can be immersed in the water vessel, but not long enough to hang in a bight, or water will drip from the wick at the lowest point of the curve until the reservoir is emptied.

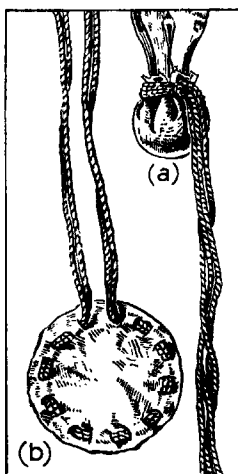


FIG. 21.
(a) Wet bulb with ordinary muslin and wick (b) Muslin cap

Precautions necessary in taking wet-bulb observations. To get correct readings the muslin must be damp, but not dripping. If it is too wet, the reading of the thermometer will be too high. If it is not wet enough, the reading will again be too high. The former defect may be cured by cutting down the number of threads supplying moisture to the bulb. Take care, however, that this remedy does not make the muslin too dry.

It is important that the water should be pure. Ordinary water contains substances in solution and, if such water is used, as it evaporates it deposits these substances on the thread and muslin; the free flow of water to the muslin and its evaporation therefrom are checked, and the thermometer may read too high. Moreover, the rate of evaporation from impure water may differ appreciably from that for pure water. It is therefore desirable that distilled

water should be used. This may be available from the ship's radio office, but is liable to become contaminated with acid in the course of a voyage. If, therefore, sufficient distilled water can be collected from the ship's radio office at the commencement of a voyage, this should be used. If distilled water is not available, condenser water from the engine-room may be used.

The muslin should be changed at least once a week and more often if it be dirty or contaminated by salt spray. The presence of salt in the water will cause the thermometer to read too high and, if any spray has reached the instrument, the muslin and wick should be replaced by new ones. It is advisable to do this in any case after bad weather. If it is found that an encrustation of lime or other impurity has formed on the thermometer bulb, this should be scraped off. A note should be made in the "Remarks" column of the meteorological logbook whenever the muslin is changed.

After the muslin has been changed, some time must be allowed to elapse before observations are resumed. This is to ensure that the proper degree of wetting has been achieved and that the thermometer and wetted muslin have attained the properly balanced temperature.

Wet-bulb temperature higher than dry-bulb. If the reading of the wet-bulb thermometer is above that of the dry-bulb, first make sure that the readings were correct. Then ensure that the muslin and thread are moist but not too wet and that the dry bulb is indeed dry. (If the latter has to be wiped, allow it to cool to the air temperature before a second reading.) If no fault is found, book the temperatures as they have been read and note in the "Remarks" column that the reading has been checked, the muslin and thread examined, and that the ventilation is adequate.

Except as a result of a defect, it is impossible for the wet bulb to read higher than the dry if a temperature is steady, and if the wet bulb is above freezing point (see below). If the temperature is changing, however, one of the thermometers may be more sensitive than the other and follow the temperature changes with less lag. Under such circumstances it is possible that the wet-bulb thermometer may sometimes be found to be reading higher than the dry bulb. In such a case the wet bulb should be taken as correct and the dry-bulb reading adjusted to equality with the wet bulb. If this phenomenon occurs frequently and the fault cannot otherwise be traced, it may lie in one of the thermometers. These should be examined and if there is nothing obviously wrong the spare thermometer should be brought into use to replace the first one, and then (if necessary) the other thermometer, till satisfactory observations are again obtained.

Wet-bulb readings during frost. During frost, when the muslin is thinly coated with ice, the readings are still valid because evaporation takes place from a surface of ice as freely as from one of water. If the muslin is dry it must be given an ice coating by wetting it slightly with ice-cold water, using a camel-hair brush or by other means. The water will usually take 10 to 15 minutes to freeze. Excess of water must not be used as it takes much longer to freeze and will also not give accurate readings. After the wetting of the muslin, the temperature generally remains steady at 0°C (32°F) until all the water has been converted to ice. It then begins to fall gradually to the true ice-bulb reading. No reading must be recorded until the temperature of the ice bulb has fallen below that of the dry bulb and remains steady. Dry windy weather may cause the ice to evaporate completely before the time of the next reading, in which case the procedure of wetting the bulb must be gone through again. The original coating of ice will give satisfactory results as long as it lasts.

It must be pointed out that super-cooled water may exist on the wet bulb at temperatures well below freezing point and that, if this is not noticed by the observer, serious errors will occur. The freezing can be started by touching the wet bulb with a snow crystal, a pencil, or other object.

Measures of humidity. Dew-point and relative humidity can be obtained from the readings of the dry and wet bulb.

The *dew-point* is the temperature at which dew would begin to form on the bulb of the thermometer if the air were cooled down, the amount of water vapour in it remaining unchanged. Tables 15 to 18 give the dew-point for dry-bulb temperatures and depressions of the wet bulb. The depression of the wet bulb is the difference between the dry- and wet-bulb readings. The amount of this depression depends on the ventilation to which the wet-bulb thermometer is subjected and Tables 15 and 17 are to be used for observations in which the thermometers are exposed in the standard marine screen. Since the amount of evaporation from ice and water surfaces is not the same, lines are ruled in the tables to call attention to the fact that above the line evaporation is going on from a water surface while below the line it is going on from an ice surface. Intermediate figures must therefore be obtained by extrapolation.

In order that values of the wet-bulb depression of the necessary accuracy shall be available, it is especially desirable at low temperatures that the thermometers should be read to the tenth of a degree, or, at least, to the nearest half degree. This is because dew-point changes rapidly at low temperatures with changes in wet-bulb depression.

The *relative humidity* is the amount of water vapour actually present in the air, expressed as a percentage of the amount the air would contain at that temperature if it were saturated. In the British Meteorological Office a relative humidity of 95% is taken as a guide in determining whether to report mist or haze (*see tables on page 42*).

THE MARINE SCREEN

Exposure of thermometers. No matter how accurate a thermometer may be, it can do no more than indicate its own temperature. It is therefore essential that the thermometer is in correct contact with the medium whose temperature it is to measure, in order that it may "share" its true temperature, and that it is protected from any extraneous source of heat. When measuring the air temperature, particular problems arise on this score, in that the thermometer must be shielded from the heat radiated by the sun, the sea and from the ship itself, yet at the same time the air, which is itself transparent to such radiated heat, must be allowed to flow freely past the thermometer. On this score it is worthy of recognition that a thermometer exposed directly to the sun can easily reach the temperature of boiling water and will quickly be broken by the continued expansion of the liquid within. No normal meteorological thermometer, for whatever purpose it is supplied, must ever be exposed to full sunlight for more than a moment or two, and, when stored, should be kept in its box.

A thermometer screen is used to shield the thermometer from external radiation, yet allowing an adequate flow of air.

Design of thermometer screen. There are several acceptable designs of thermometer screens, although only one is regarded as the Meteorological Office standard marine type. The essential features of any such screen, which at present is made of wood, are that the vertical walls are composed of louvres or

“jalousies”, constructed so that no direct radiation can reach the thermometers but allowing relatively free air flow to reach the thermometer, while in addition vertical ventilation is permitted through the slotted floor and through holes in an inner roof. Hence, should the air within the screen become warmer or colder than its surroundings, it may rise or sink, and be replaced by outside air of the correct temperature. Such screens are painted white as a further precaution against radiation. Screens should be repainted when necessary and a watch should be kept for possible rotting of the woodwork, particularly in the lower corners. Marine screens will normally contain two thermometers, the dry bulb and the wet bulb.

Position of marine screen. The screen should be placed in the open air and, for convenience in reading the thermometers, about 5 feet above the deck. It may be exposed in sun or shade, preferably slung from an awning spar or ridge rope, so as to have an unimpeded circulation of air flowing through it. It should be out of the way of unauthorized persons; it must not be exposed to suddenly varying conditions due to causes within the ship, such as draughts of air from boilers, engine-room, etc. The lighting at night should be so arranged that it cannot affect the temperature of the thermometers. By day or by night the light should come from behind or from the side of the observer. The thermometer screen is usually placed on the bridge.

The position of the thermometer screen requires great attention. It cannot be too strongly emphasized that the temperature of the free air is required, not of that affected by heat from the ship, and therefore the weather side of the ship is most suitable. The most suitable location is where the air will come direct on to the screen from the sea before passing over any part of the ship. The ship is a source of local heat; radiation takes place from the hull and from sunny decks, deck houses, etc., especially in the tropics. Radiation of heat, or warm draughts of air, may be felt from galleys, engine and boiler rooms, stokehold and funnel. The thermometer screen should be as far as possible removed from all such sources of local heating which will tend to cause false air temperatures, particularly on days when the relative wind is light. The choice of the bridge will avoid some of these sources of heating. (See Fig. 22.)

The position of the screen may need changing with shifts of wind or alterations of course. When not in use it may be stowed as most convenient.

Setting up the thermometers. Sheathed thermometers are held in place by means of two clips. The thermometers should not be allowed to touch the floor of the screen but if they slip down through the clips a rubber grummet (obtainable from Port Meteorological Officers) should be placed over the thermometer, resting above the top or bottom clip. The plastic water bottle is placed between the thermometers and held in place with a plastic clip.

ASPIRATED AND WHIRLING PSYCHROMETERS

The system of measuring humidity by means of dry- and wet-bulb thermometers contained in a louvred thermometer screen assumes that the design of the screen controls the internal air flow between limits usually taken as 2–4 knots. Although in the open air the assumption appears reasonably correct, there will be occasions when greater accuracy is needed or, for temporary observations, a thermometer screen cannot be erected. Moreover the assumption will rarely, if ever, be true if temperatures and humidities are to be measured in confined spaces, for example within the hold of a ship.

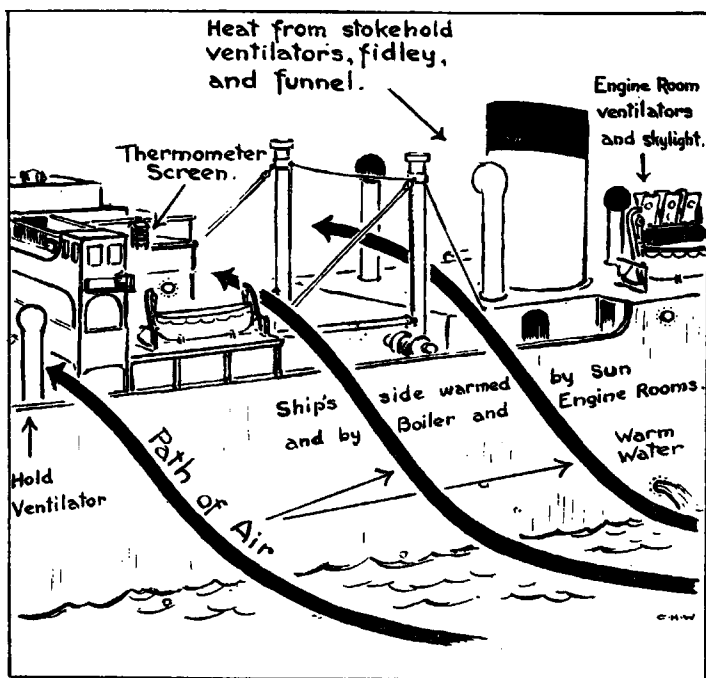


FIG. 22. Various sources of local heating in a merchant ship

The difficulty is overcome by artificially ventilating the thermometers at a controlled rate. Such thermometers are said to be “aspirated”. Aspiration is performed by a fan which, operated by electric or clockwork motor, or even by hand (at a controlled speed) will draw air over the thermometers at a known rate. Aspirated thermometer systems require no thermometer screen, but include their own shield against direct radiation. An even more simple system ensures adequate ventilation by whirling or rotating the thermometers by hand at a controlled rate, the thermometers being mounted in a suitable holder to permit this. Such hand-held psychrometers are normally provided with no precautions against radiation whatsoever and must therefore be used only in the shade. This is also desirable in the case of the mechanically aspirated psychrometer.

As the rate of ventilation produced by aspirated and whirled psychrometers differs from that assumed to prevail in the static thermometer screen, different hygrometric tables must be employed, and the greatest care must be taken to ensure that the tables appropriate to the method are in fact used. Tables 16 and 18, at the end of this book, are those correctly employed with aspirated and whirling psychrometers. As with Tables 15 and 17, lines are ruled to draw attention to the fact that above the line evaporation is taking place from a water surface, while below the line it is occurring from an ice surface. Interpolation of readings must therefore not be made between figures on different sides of the line.

THE APPLICATION OF HYGROMETRIC OBSERVATIONS IN THE CARE AND PROPER VENTILATION OF CARGO

Sweating, or the deposition of moisture, is a frequent cause of damage, both to cargo and to the internal structure of a ship, and it is desirable to keep a record, not only of the temperature and humidity of the outside air through which the ship is passing, but also of the temperature and humidity of the air in each hold, as far as this is practicable. Although deductions from such data will vary accordingly to the nature of the cargo and the construction of the ship, experience of these observations should help the seaman to judge whether, at any particular time, his cargo and the structure of his ship are in danger of damage by moisture and whether conditions are likely to be improved, or the reverse, by ventilation.

SEA TEMPERATURE

The routine meteorological requirement is for observation of sea-water temperature taken from near or just below the surface. The precise depth is not specified but any one of several methods is regarded as adequate. These methods are:

- (i) by obtaining a sample by bucket;
- (ii) by thermometer immersed in the sea or in proximity to the sea.
- (iii) by engine-room intake temperature.

Bucket method. From a slow-moving ship having a bridge height of up to about 40 feet it is comparatively easy to draw a sample of sea water on board by almost any form of bucket strong enough to withstand the water pressure while being towed. A thermometer may then be inserted and the water temperature measured. Small buckets made of double-skinned canvas or rubber are very suitable for this purpose. Single-skinned canvas buckets are not suitable because any evaporation from the sides of the bucket would lower the temperature of the water sample.

The problem of getting a sea-water sample with a bucket becomes increasingly difficult as ships' size, speed and height of bridge are increased. Canvas buckets are so light that they would obviously be unsuitable for a fast ship from a high bridge. Even if not torn away on entry into the sea, little water would remain by the time it had been drawn up to deck level and the bucket's life would be very short. A smaller and somewhat heavier bucket made of rubber reinforced by canvas is now supplied to all British Voluntary Observing Ships. This bucket is little more than a closed length of rubber hose and it is suitable for taking sea temperatures in almost any ship but a complete solution of successfully using a bucket regardless of the size and speed of ship has yet to be found. Extensive trials with this rubber bucket have shown that the temperature of the water sample changes very slowly after it has been hove on deck.

The small rubber buckets described above were originally designed to contain a thermometer which was lowered and immersed in the sea with the bucket itself. A high rate of thermometer breakage was experienced and the policy now is to immerse the thermometer into the sample of sea water when the bucket is drawn up on deck. There is in fact little disadvantage in this: whether the thermometer is immersed in the sea or inserted later, it will do no more than measure the temperature of the sample at the moment of observing.

Whichever type of bucket is used, it should be swung as far out as possible to

avoid the shallow layers of water close to the hull which have been warmed by the ship itself. Probably the best way of getting the water sample is to use the bucket as though one were taking a cast of the hand lead. On entering the water the bucket should submerge quickly and cleanly. If drawn along the surface, a fault to which some designs are particularly prone, it will be filled with spray, possessing some temperature intermediate to that of the sea and that of the air.

On being withdrawn, a thermometer should be inserted into the sample immediately. This should be done in the shade; direct sunlight, in addition to its direct effect upon the thermometer, can warm the sea-water sample very quickly.

Individual thermometers are calibrated either for complete immersion into the medium whose temperature is to be measured, or for contact through the thermometer bulb alone (e.g. clinical thermometers). Meteorological thermometers are invariably of the former class and, if not large, would give rise to unacceptable errors when the air/sea temperature differences are large. In consequence the whole thermometer should be covered by the sea water without touching either the sides or bottom of the bucket. Devices which hold the thermometer within the bucket may be available, but otherwise it should be held at the extreme end by finger tip, without actually letting the fingers (which are a source of heat) enter the sample. With the large canvas bucket the thermometer should be moved with a slow stirring action. After immersion for about one minute the thermometer should be withdrawn just sufficiently to allow the scale to be read, the bulb and as much of the stem as possible being left immersed.

Almost any meteorological thermometer may be used for this purpose. Where special support frames are employed the thermometer must be of suitable dimensions, but otherwise it is convenient to use the type common to those employed for dry- and wet-bulb observation.

After use, the thermometer should be dried and returned to its box for careful storage with the bulb end downwards.

Distant-reading thermometers. There would obviously be many advantages in measuring temperature by means of a distant-reading instrument while the thermometer bulb was actually immersed in the sea. In its most simple form such a device would be lowered by cable alongside the ship and readings taken in-board while it was towed. There are, however, certain difficulties in such a method. It is difficult to control the depth of such a device or even ensure that it enters the water at all and does not merely skip along the surface. The strain of towing upon the cable can also be a cause of error in the electrical measurements, while a freely-towed device could damage itself against the side of the ship. Such devices are still being developed experimentally but no standard generally usable instrument is yet available.

Some ships, mainly of foreign origin, employ a submerged electrical thermometer attached to the hull of the ship, indicating its observations by cable to the bridge. This is most convenient, but the thermometer, even though partially protected, is vulnerable to damage by flotsam or when in dock and the hull itself must be pierced to allow entry of the cable.

A new method recently evolved by the Meteorological Office and installed in the few research ships is somewhat similar but places the thermometer inside the hull, measuring the sea temperature by conduction through the ship's side plating, the principle being that steel is such a good conductor that it transmits the temperature of the surrounding sea water. The thermometer, which is in the form of a small, thin, printed electrical resistance circuit little bigger than a postage stamp, is pressed to the inside of the hull in a forward and unheated

compartment of the ship at a point a few feet below the normal water-line. The system, which requires the whole plate to change temperature with that of the sea, has a long lag, and is thus unaffected by short period roll or pitch, but would be invalidated if the position of the thermometer were raised above sea level by change in loading. The system demands cabling to the place where temperatures are to be read, normally the bridge, and installation is therefore somewhat costly.

Engine-room intake temperatures. The temperature of the engine-room intake water can be taken as a measure of sea-water temperature either by thermometer or by thermograph. To an extent dependent on the individual ship, the accuracy will be questionable although the method is very convenient and may well be the only one possible (in the absence of the hull thermometer described above) when the bucket method cannot be used because of rough seas, too great a ship speed or a bridge too high above the water-line. The errors arise from the varying depth from which the water is drawn as the ship rolls or pitches and the risk of pre-heating as the water passes through pipes at or close to engine-room temperature or through oil and water tanks on the inside of the hull. A sample of the intake water may be drawn off by tap, the subsequent procedure being that described in the bucket method above, or the temperature measured by a thermometer installed within the intake pipe. In the latter case the thermometer will usually be inserted in a pocket formed within the pipe, and the main problem which then arises is of assuring good thermal conductivity. One of the disadvantages of using intake temperatures is the liability to error due to having to telephone the thermometer reading from the engine-room to the bridge. Obviously it would be possible to have a distant-reading arrangement so that the intake temperature could be read on the bridge but this would be an expensive arrangement.

THE MEASUREMENT OF SOLAR RADIATION

Solar radiation (the electromagnetic radiation from the sun) is the prime driving force of all atmospheric disturbances so it is important to measure the energy from this source received at different parts of the globe, both on land and at sea. This radiation consists of a large range of wave-lengths, but three broad categories can be recognised:

- (i) Wave-lengths too short for the eye to see, known as ultra-violet radiation.
- (ii) Wave-lengths to which the eye is sensitive, known as light.
- (iii) Wave-lengths too long for the eye to see, known as infra-red radiation.

At sea the measurement is usually of the total energy in all these wave-lengths which falls on a unit horizontal area. About half the energy measured is, in fact, light and the remainder is either ultra-violet or infra-red radiation. In the absence of cloud or an atmosphere all the solar radiation would, of course, come only from the direction of the sun and the remainder of the sky would be dark, but in natural conditions a consumable portion of the energy is received as diffuse or scattered radiation. When the sky is overcast all the radiation received is diffuse.

The instrument in general use in the Meteorological Office for measuring solar radiation is a Moll-Gorczynski solarimeter (*see* Fig. 15). It is a horizontal thermopile (with the surface blackened to increase absorption) with alternate

thin strips of manganin and constantan, one set of junctions being along the centre line of the surface (the active junctions) while the remaining junctions are in good thermal contact with the relatively massive supporting posts, which are insulated electrically but not thermally from the base plate. When radiation falls on this thermopile the temperature of the centre is raised and a small voltage (some millivolts) is produced between the leads, this voltage being recorded as described below. The thermopile is shielded by two glass domes and the outer one needs to be wiped clean whenever necessary—particularly of spray deposits at sea; the interior of the instrument is kept dry by silica gel (in a screw-off holder) which must be renewed when necessary. A white horizontal guard plate, removed for the photograph (Fig. 15), is mounted level with the thermopile surface to help protect the outside of the instrument from direct radiation.

All the British Ocean Weather Ships have these solarimeters in a special gimbal mounting, so that the thermopile remains horizontal, and they must naturally be fitted in as unobstructed a position as possible—normally high on the bridge. The recording is usually on a chart of a self-balancing potentiometer, but the Meteorological Office Data Logging Equipment (Modle), now in use at land stations and gradually being introduced aboard the British Ocean Weather Ships, will be adopted generally for other Ocean Weather Ships; it produces a chart, a digital display and punched paper tape (later to be magnetic tape) the latter being processed by the Meteorological Office computer to yield the required mean values.

Hydrographic survey ships of the Royal Navy, British research ships and certain British Selected Ships have also been supplied with these special mountings; here the recording is mostly by the chart display of a self-balancing potentiometer, but increasing use is being made of a direct magnetic tape recorder, which can be processed by the computer.

Those ships having solarimeters receive special installation and maintenance instructions and there is a regular exchange of recalibrated instruments arranged by Kew Observatory.

CHAPTER 3

General Meteorological Instruments

Instruments have been developed for land stations for the measurement of almost every meteorological element, with the notable exception of cloud type and amount. These, being purely subjective observations, can only be assessed by human interpretation. Unfortunately very few of the instruments designed for land stations are capable of operating with reasonable satisfaction on board ship where special problems arise, not only from the motion of the vessel, its forward movement and exposure to saline spray, but also because of the disturbances created by the ship itself in the surrounding atmosphere.

In consequence, methods suitable for land stations would be at best merely an unnecessary expense if used at sea, and at worst would soon fail to operate or give misleading results. For example, a hair hygrograph, an instrument giving a continuous recording of the relative humidity of the air, relies upon the change of length of a bundle of human hairs for its operation. In addition to the adverse effect of ship's movement upon the very light and delicate pen movement, the existence of salt upon the hairs would completely invalidate their readings.

Pressure, temperature and, to a large degree, humidity have been covered in the preceding chapters. For general interest the standard instruments for measuring the other normally observed elements are given below, without regard as to whether they might, in special circumstances, be adapted for ship use.

WIND SPEED AND DIRECTION

Anemometer. This consists of cups rotatable about a vertical shaft or a propellor rotating about a horizontal shaft. When driven by the wind at a speed proportional to wind force, the rotating shaft drives an electrical generator whose output is itself proportional to the speed of rotation. An ammeter may thus be calibrated as wind speed. Anemometers are not normally used aboard merchant ships because of the difficulty of finding a suitable site and also because of expense. The British Weather Ships carry two anemometers on a yardarm, one each side of the main mast at a height of 64 feet above the water-line, which seems to be the site furthest from eddying effects. But even here estimates are made regularly of wind force and direction from the appearance of the sea as a check on the instruments. (*See Figs. 13 and 14.*)

Wind vane. The wind direction may be directly observed by the position of the wind vane or remotely read at ground (or deck) level by an electrical direction transmitter known as a Magslip (for mains power) or a Desynn (battery operation).

RAINFALL

Raingauge. Rainfall is collected over a known horizontal area by means of a funnel placed over a metal can or glass bottle. The water so collected may be stored for measurement as a total quantity over an interval of 12 or 24 hours, or be made to operate one of various recording devices as it occurs.

CLOUD HEIGHT

Cloud height balloons. These are small balloons filled with hydrogen to give them a known rate of ascent. When released from the ground they are timed with a stopwatch until seen to enter the cloud base. From the rate of ascent and the time taken the cloud height is then computed.

Cloud searchlight. This method is only available at night. A small searchlight is projected vertically on to the cloud base and observed from a known distance, usually 1,000 feet. From the point of observation, the apparent angle of the bright spot where the searchlight falls on to the cloud is observed by alidade, theodolite or sextant and the height can thus be calculated.

Cloud base recorder. This is an automatic device in which the same principles are employed as for the cloud searchlight, in that the angle at which a projected beam of light meets the cloud is measured over a known baseline. In this automatic instrument, however, the light is "modulated", i.e. is interrupted at a known rate, and a photocell, replacing the human eye, detects only this modulated light even in the presence of daylight. The cloud base recorder can thus operate day or night and will provide a continuous record of cloud height from its own operation of the angle of sight measured by the photocell system.

UPPER WINDS

Pilot-balloon ascent. Small hydrogen-filled balloons, whose rate of ascent is predetermined, are followed by optical theodolite. From the observed bearings the horizontal movement of the balloon, and hence the wind, can be computed for each layer of the atmosphere through which the balloon passes.

Wind-finding radar. This method is similar to the pilot-balloon ascent but the balloon is followed by radar. In consequence, the upper winds may be computed even when the balloon is invisible in cloud or fog. The balloon carries a "radar reflector" to provide proper radar response. The radar is specially designed to give precision bearings of azimuth and elevation and accurate ranges.

UPPER AIR TEMPERATURE AND HUMIDITY

Radiosonde. A device carried by hydrogen-filled balloons to make frequently repeated observations of pressure, temperature and humidity and to signal these observations to the ground by radio (*see* Fig. 12). The radiosonde is frequently carried aloft by the same balloon used for radar-winds. Special ground equipment and staff training is usually required to receive and decode the radiosonde signals but future automatic systems, suitable for ship use, can be envisaged in the near future. Radiosonde and radar-wind observations are made regularly aboard weather ships.

VISIBILITY

Visibility recorder or transmissometer. Light from a lamp of known output is transmitted over a prescribed distance parallel to the ground. It is then received by a calibrated photocell. The degree by which the light has been attenuated by mist or fog is thus observable. An alternative system, employing the increased amount of light scattered backwards towards the light when fog exists, is already in use by Trinity House on lighthouses and light-vessels and could well be employed for ships, although the cost of this instrument is high.

Part II Non-instrumental Observations

Introduction. Non-instrumental observations are very important and, being estimates, they are dependent upon the personal judgment of the observer. This judgment is the product of training and experience at sea, together with practice in making the observations. To acquire a technique of observation, adherence to the official instructions is essential. The aim of these instructions is not only to outline a satisfactory method of making observations, but to impose a standard procedure such that two observers, despite differences in training, will make approximately the same observation in similar circumstances. The assumption that observations are comparable, or made according to the same procedure, is the basis of synoptic meteorology or of a study of climate.

Observations from ships are of special importance to the forecaster not only because they enable him to complete his charts over the oceans, but also because weather sequences at sea are simpler than those on land. They are therefore more characteristic of the air masses and hence more useful in the air-mass analysis that precedes the preparation of forecasts. Numerous instances occur in which the presence or absence of adequate ship reports has made all the difference between good and bad weather forecasts. An observer should never forget that his individual effort, his particular observations, may supply just the information required to resolve a forecasting problem hundreds or thousands of miles away.

The making of meteorological observations at sea is attended by many difficulties that are unknown to the observer on shore. It is in overcoming them that the experience and training of the mariner are important. These difficulties largely result from the movement of the ship and the absence of landmarks.

CHAPTER 4

Wind, Weather and Visibility

Wind force and direction. Wind force is expressed numerically on a scale from 0 to 12.* This scale, which originally defined the wind force in terms of the canvas carried by a full-rigged frigate, was devised by Captain, afterwards Admiral, Sir Francis Beaufort in the year 1808 for use on board ships of the Royal Navy. Since Admiral Beaufort's time, however, so many changes had taken place in the build, rig, and tonnage of sea-going vessels that in 1874 Beaufort's scale was adapted to the full-rigged ship with double topsails of that period. With the passing of sail, this specification meant very little to those who had no experience in square-rigged ships, and the practice arose of judging wind force from the state of the sea surface. In 1939 the International Meteorological Organization agreed to the use of a sea criterion by which the wind force was judged from the appearance of the sea surface. This specification, brought into use in 1941, is shown on pages 36 and 37. Photographs showing the appearance of the sea corresponding to each Beaufort force are given between pages 40 and 41.

*See Note to Table 22.

BEAUFORT SCALE OF WIND FORCE

Beaufort Scale Number	Mean Wind Speed in knots	Limits of Wind Speed in knots	Descriptive Terms	Sea Criterion	Probable Height of Waves in metres*	Probable Maximum Height of Waves in metres*
	Measured at a height of 33 feet above sea level					
	00	Less than 1				
0	00	Less than 1	Calm	Sea like a mirror.	—	—
1	02	1-3	Light air	Ripples with the appearance of scales are formed but without foam crests.	0.1	0.1
2	05	4-6	Light breeze	Small wavelets, still short but more pronounced, crests have a glassy appearance and do not break.	0.2	0.3
3	09	7-10	Gentle breeze	Large wavelets. Crests begin to break. Foam of glassy appearance. Perhaps scattered white horses.	0.6	1.0
4	13	11-16	Moderate breeze	Small waves, becoming longer; fairly frequent white horses.	1.0	1.5
5	19	17-21	Fresh breeze	Moderate waves, taking a more pronounced long form; many white horses are formed. (Chance of some spray.)	2.0	2.5
6	24	22-27	Strong breeze	Large waves begin to form: the white foam crests are more extensive everywhere. (Probably some spray.)	3.0	4.0
7	30	28-33	Near gale	Sea heaps up and white foam from breaking waves begins to be blown in streaks along the direction of the wind.	4.0	5.5
8	37	34-40	Gale	Moderately high waves of greater length; edges of crests begin to break into spindrift. The foam is blown in well-marked streaks along the direction of the wind.	5.5	7.5

BEAUFORT SCALE OF WIND FORCE—continued

Beaufort Scale Number	Mean Wind Speed in knots	Limits of Wind Speed in knots	Descriptive Terms	Sea Criterion	Probable Height of Waves in metres*	Probable Maximum Height of Waves in metres*
	Measured at a height of 33 feet above sea level					
9	44	41-47	Strong gale	High waves. Dense streaks of foam along the direction of the wind. Crests of waves begin to topple, tumble and roll over. Spray may affect visibility.	7-0	10-0
10	52	48-55	Storm	Very high waves with long overhanging crests. The resulting foam in great patches is blown in dense white streaks along the direction of the wind. On the whole the surface of the sea takes a white appearance. The tumbling of the sea becomes heavy and shocklike. Visibility affected.	9-0	12-5
11	60	56-63	Violent storm	Exceptionally high waves. (Small and medium-sized ships might be for a time lost to view behind the waves.) The sea is completely covered with long white patches of foam lying along the direction of the wind. Everywhere the edges of the wave crests are blown into froth. Visibility affected.	11-5	16-0
12	—	64 and over	Hurricane	The air is filled with foam and spray. Sea completely white with driving spray; visibility very seriously affected.	14 or over	—

*These columns are added as a guide to show roughly what may be expected in the open sea, remote from land. In enclosed waters, or when near land with an off-shore wind, wave heights will be smaller and the waves steeper.

NOTES.—(1) It must be realised that it will be difficult at night to estimate wind force by the sea criterion.

(2) The lag effect between the wind getting up and the sea increasing should be borne in mind.

(3) Fetch, depth, swell, heavy rain and tide effects should be considered when estimating the wind force from the appearance of the sea.

In using this specification it is assumed that the observation is made in the open ocean and that the wind has been blowing long enough to raise the appropriate sea. The possibility of a lag between the wind getting up and the sea increasing must be considered. The appearance of the sea surface also depends on many other factors such as the fetch of the wind (i.e., distance from weather shore), the swell, the presence of tides, and whether or not precipitation is occurring. These effects should be allowed for before deciding the appropriate number on the scale. Experience is the only sure guide but the following remarks may be of some use:

(i) A discrepancy between wind and sea occurs frequently close inshore where winds of a local character are likely.

(ii) An off-shore wind does not produce its appropriate sea close inshore but requires a certain fetch before its full effect is produced.

(iii) Swell is the name given to waves, generally of considerable length, raised by winds at a considerable distance from the point of observation. Swell is not taken into account when estimating wind.

(iv) Tides or strong currents affect the appearance of the sea surface, a wind against tide or current causing more "lop"—a weather tide—and the wind in the same direction as a tide or current producing less disturbance of the sea surface—a lee tide.

(v) Precipitation, especially if heavy, produces a smoothing effect on the sea surface.

(vi) There is evidence that the height of the sea disturbance caused by a wind of a particular force is affected by the difference between sea and air temperatures, the sea being the warmer medium. If this difference increases, there is an appreciable increase in the sea disturbance, and vice versa.

Beaufort force can be transformed approximately into wind speed by means of a table of equivalents. As the wind speed varies with the height, it is necessary to relate it to a standard height. This standard height is taken to be 33 feet (10 metres). The speed equivalents at this standard height are included in the specification of Beaufort force given on pages 36 and 37.

The International Code (used for making meteorological reports by radio) makes provision for the reporting of wind speed in knots. The observer may derive this from the table of equivalents, taking the mid-point of the range corresponding with the observed Beaufort force; or, better still, he may interpolate according to his own judgment. For example, if the wind is estimated to be over Beaufort 5 but not quite Beaufort 6, it might be reported as having a mean speed of 21 knots.

Wind direction is logged as the true, not the compass, direction and is given to the nearest ten degrees. The exposed position that a ship's standard compass usually occupies gives a clear all-round view and from it the observer takes a compass bearing, noting the tops of the waves, the ripples, the spray and the faint lines that generally show along the wind. It is usually best to look to windward in judging wind direction, but in some lights the direction is more evident when looking to leeward.

Meteorologists as well as seamen use the term "veering" to indicate a change of wind in a clockwise direction and the term "backing" to denote a change in an anticlockwise direction.

Estimation of wind force and direction can often be made in the same way at night but sometimes on very dark nights it is impossible to see the effect of

the lighter winds on the sea surface. In such cases the apparent or relative wind force and direction must be estimated by their effect, i.e. by the "feel" upon the face or upon a moistened finger, or by the direction in which the smoke is blowing. Allowance must then be made for the ship's course and speed. In a fast ship considerable difference exists between the apparent and true wind directions. When the wind is astern and of the same velocity as the ship there is apparent calm on board the ship. In a calm a ship steaming 10 knots will have an apparent head wind of velocity 10 knots, but as soon as the wind blows from any direction out of the fore and aft line, the difference between the apparent and true directions will vary with each angle on the bow, and each force of the wind. The true wind may be obtained from the apparent wind by use of the parallelogram of velocities, or Table 22 as explained below. In Fig. 23 if, for example, the ship is travelling along the line AB with speed 15 knots and the wind appears to be coming from the direction DA with speed 29 knots (Beaufort scale 7), the true direction of the wind is along CA and its speed 18 knots.

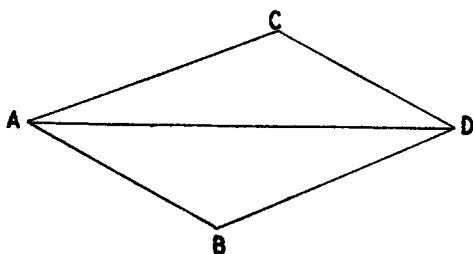


FIG. 23. Wind, parallelogram of velocities

This result is easily obtained graphically by drawing the figure, making BA proportional to 15 and DA proportional to 29, and then measuring DB which is equal to CA, where ABDC is a parallelogram. The angle CAD, which is the same as BDA, is measured with a protractor and gives the difference between the true and apparent directions of the wind. The force and direction of the true wind may also be worked out by trigonometry, if preferred. To do this use the formula

$$BD^2 = AB^2 + AD^2 - 2AB \cdot AD \cos BAD$$

the angle BDA being then calculated from the rule of sines. Table 22 enables the conversion from apparent to true wind to be made by inspection.

In fast vessels the task of estimating accurately the true wind force and direction is no easy one and special care is required; this applies particularly to occasions when the wind is very light, and on dark nights.

Anemometers have as yet found only limited use at sea, the chief problem being to achieve a suitable exposure. The ship disturbs the airflow in its vicinity with the result that the wind measured by the instrument is not representative of the true airflow over the open sea. If a portable type of cup anemometer is used, the exposure may be varied at will and the best position chosen for any particular wind direction. The instrument measures "apparent" wind speed. To determine the true value, the wind direction must first be estimated and then allowance made for the speed of the ship.

Wind force and direction, taken alone, do not completely specify the character of the wind. It is well known that on occasions the wind is particularly gusty, as in showery weather. Less frequently, definite squalls may occur. The difference between a gust and a squall is essentially one of time-scale, a gust being momentary, whereas a squall may last several minutes. It is important when making the observations to note any unusual gustiness and the occurrence of squalls. When the latter occur it is of advantage if the time be noted together with any sudden change in wind direction. It is of interest to note that gusts have no appreciable effect in raising waves, whereas squalls may act for a sufficient length of time to raise a group of waves which tend to travel with the squall.

WEATHER

For purposes of the meteorological logbook, the term “weather” embraces those elements covered by the ww and W codes, i.e., fog, precipitation, etc. (See Met. O. 509, *Ships’ Code and Decode Book*.)

For a concise description of weather, Admiral Beaufort devised a system known as the Beaufort notation. Since 1958 this method has not been used to record weather at the synoptic hour but it is given below as it provides a handy way of amplifying the main synoptic report, or of recording the weather between observations, e.g. duration of precipitation, in the remarks column of the meteorological logbook for research purposes. It may also be found useful in the Deck Logbook and in the plotting of weather bulletins.

The present ww and W codes are sufficient to describe the weather for synoptic purposes, and have the added merit of being able to be punched on to cards for data processing.

The Beaufort notation

Weather	Beaufort Letter	Weather	Beaufort Letter
Blue sky (0-2/8 clouded)	b	Overcast sky. (The whole sky covered with unbroken cloud)	o
Sky partly clouded (3-5/8 clouded)	bc	Squally weather	q
Cloudy (6-8/8 clouded)	c	Rain	r
Drizzle	d	Sleet (i.e. rain and snow together)	rs
Wet air (without precipitation)	e	Snow	s
Fog	f	Thunder	t
Gale	g	Thunderstorm with rain or snow	tlr or tls
Hail	h	Ugly threatening sky	u
Precipitation in sight of ship or station	jp	Unusual visibility	v
Line squall	kq	Dew	w
Storm of drifting snow	ks	Hoar frost	x
Sandstorm or duststorm	kz	Dry air	y
Lightning	l	Dust haze	z
Mist	m		

The system has been extended since Beaufort’s day to provide indication of intensity and continuity. Capital letters are now used to indicate occasions when the phenomenon noted is intense. On the other hand, occasions of slight intensity are distinguished by adding a small suffix “o”.

STATE OF SEA PHOTOGRAPHS, FOR ESTIMATING WIND SPEED
(SEE PAGE 35)

See footnotes on page 37

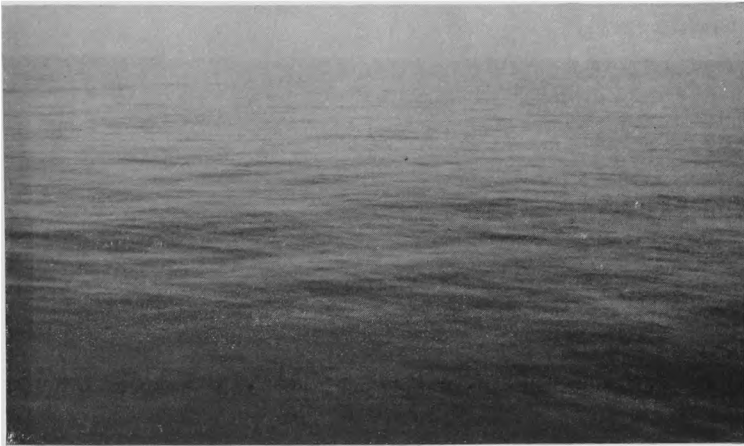


Photo by R. R. Baxter (Crown Copyright)

FORCE 0

Wind speed less than 1 kt. (Sea like a mirror.)

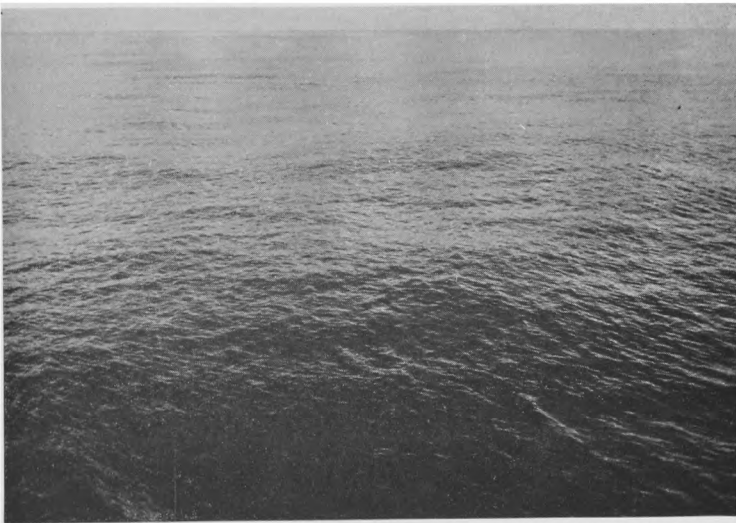


Photo by R. R. Baxter (Crown Copyright)

FORCE 1

Wind speed 1-3 kt; mean, 2 kt.
(Ripples with the appearance of scales are formed, but without foam crests.)



Photo by R. R. Baxter (Crown Copyright)

FORCE 2

Wind speed 4–6 kt; mean, 5 kt.

(Small wavelets, still short but more pronounced—crests have a glassy appearance and do not break.)



Photo by R. Palmer

FORCE 3

Wind speed 7–10 kt; mean, 9 kt.

(Large wavelets. Crests begin to break. Foam of glassy appearance. Perhaps scattered white horses.)

SEA PLATE II



Photo by P. J. Weaver

FORCE 4

Wind speed 11–16 kt; mean, 13 kt.
(Small waves, becoming longer; fairly frequent white horses.)



Photo by R. R. Baxter (Crown Copyright)

FORCE 5

Wind speed 17–21 kt; mean, 19 kt.
(Moderate waves, taking a more pronounced long form; many white horses are formed.
Chance of some spray.)



Photo by R. R. Baxter (Crown Copyright)

FORCE 6

Wind speed 22-27 kt; mean, 24 kt.

(Large waves begin to form; the white foam crests are more extensive everywhere.
Probably some spray.)



Photo by R. R. Baxter (Crown Copyright)

FORCE 7

Wind speed 28-33 kt; mean, 30 kt.

(Sea heaps up and white foam from breaking waves begins to be blown in streaks
along the direction of the wind.)

SEA PLATE IV



Photo by R. R. Baxter (Crown Copyright)

FORCE 8

Wind speed 34–40 kt; mean, 37 kt.

(Moderately high waves of greater length; edges of crests begin to break into the spindrift. The foam is blown in well-marked streaks along the direction of the wind.)



Photo by O. R. Bates

FORCE 9

Wind speed 41–47 kt; mean, 44 kt.

(High waves. Dense streaks of foam along the direction of the wind. Crests of waves begin to topple, tumble and roll over. Spray may affect visibility.)

SEA PLATE V



Photo by Kevin O'Keeffe (Crown Copyright)



Photo by J. Hodkinson

FORCE 10

(The upper and lower photographs illustrate the difference in appearance between seas viewed along the trough and at right angles to the trough respectively.)

Wind speed 48–55 kt; mean, 52 kt.

(Very high waves with long overhanging crests. The resulting foam, in great patches, is blown in dense white streaks along the direction of the wind. On the whole, the surface of the sea takes a white appearance. The tumbling of the sea becomes heavy and shock-like. Visibility affected.)

SEA PLATE VI



Photo by Kevin O'Keeffe (Crown Copyright)



Photo by G.P.O. (Crown Copyright)

FORCE 11

(The upper and lower photographs illustrate the difference in appearance between seas viewed along the trough and at right angles to the trough respectively.)

Wind speed 56–63 kt; mean, 60 kt.

[Exceptionally high waves. (Small and medium sized ships might be for a time lost to view behind the waves.) The sea is completely covered with long white patches of foam lying along the direction of the wind. Everywhere the edges of the wave crests are blown into froth. Visibility affected.]

SEA PLATE VII



Photo by G.P.O. (Crown Copyright)

FORCE 12

Wind speed 64–71 kt; mean, 68 kt; the Beaufort Scale actually extends to Force 17 (up to 118 kt), but Force 12 is the highest which can be identified from the appearance of the sea.

(The air is filled with foam and spray. Sea completely white with driving spray; visibility very seriously affected.)

Thus R = Heavy rain.
r = Moderate rain.
r₀ = Slight rain.

The prefix "i" indicates "intermittent", thus:
if = Fog patches.

ir₀ = Intermittent slight rain.

The prefix "p" indicates "shower of", thus:

pR = Shower of heavy rain.

ps₀ = Shower of slight snow.

A solidus "/" is used in "present weather" to distinguish present conditions from those in the past hour, thus:

c/r₀ = Cloudy after slight rain in the past hour.

Continuity is indicated by repeating the letter, thus:

rr = Continuous moderate rain.

The following are further examples of the use of Beaufort notation:

cs₀s₀ = Cloudy with continuous slight snow.

oid₀ = Overcast with intermittent slight drizzle.

bif = Blue sky with fog patches.

cqprh = Cloudy with squalls and shower of moderate rain and hail.

crrm = Cloudy with continuous moderate rain, and mist.

In past weather the letters are used in the same way but their order from left to right indicates sequence in time.

Thus "b, bc, cpr" indicates cloudless conditions, becoming partly cloudy, followed by cloudy conditions with shower(s) of rain.

Precipitation. A distinction is drawn in the ww and W codes between rain, drizzle and showers. Showers are of short duration and the fair periods between them are characterized by clearances of the sky. Showers fall from clouds having great vertical extent and usually isolated. They do not often last more than half-an-hour. Showers are characteristic of an unstable polar air mass, usually flowing in the rear of a depression, but they are by no means confined to this situation.

Rain and drizzle fall from overcast or nearly overcast skies. The distinction between rain and drizzle depends not on the amount of the precipitation but on the size of the drops. Drizzle is "precipitation in which the drops are very small" (diameter less than 0.5 mm). Slight rain, on the other hand, is precipitation in which the drops are of appreciable size (they may even be large drops), but are relatively few in number. Observers should decide from the size of the drops whether the precipitation is drizzle or rain, and from the combined effect of the number and size of the drops whether the precipitation is slight, moderate, or heavy. The description "heavy" is relatively rare in temperate latitudes.

Precipitation is defined as intermittent if it has been discontinuous during the preceding hour, without presenting the character of a shower. Observers should cultivate the practice of recording the times of onset and cessation of precipitation.

Fog, mist and haze. Fog, mist and haze have in the past been used, rather loosely, to describe decreasing degrees of obscurity in the atmosphere. Modern practice reserves the description "haze" for occasions when the obscurity is caused by solid particles such as dust or sea salt. Fog and mist are akin in that they are both composed of minute water drops and may thus be distinguished

from haze. In practice the distinction is usually made by means of the dry- and wet-bulb readings. The following table gives the approximate criterion for the reporting of mist and haze at various temperatures. Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation. If the depression of the wet bulb is more than about that shown in the relevant column B, haze should be reported. If the depression is less, the obscurity should be reported as mist. (A relative humidity of 95% is used by the British Meteorological Office as a guide to the dividing line between mist and haze.)

DEPRESSION OF THE WET BULB CORRESPONDING TO A RELATIVE HUMIDITY OF 95%

Column A	Columns B		Column A	Columns B	
Dry Bulb °C	Depression, °C Stevenson screen	Aspirated psychrometer	Dry Bulb °F	Depression, °F Stevenson screen	Aspirated psychrometer
40	0.8	0.8	100	1.3	1.4
35	0.7	0.7	90	1.2	1.3
30	0.7	0.7	80	1.2	1.2
25	0.6	0.6	70	1.0	1.0
20	0.5	0.6	60	0.8	0.9
15	0.5	0.5	50	0.7	0.7
10	0.4	0.4	40	0.6	0.6
5	0.3	0.3	32	0.4	0.5
0	0.3	0.3			

The further distinction between mist and fog is only one of degree and is arbitrarily assigned. When the visibility is reduced to less than 1,100 yards (1 km or 0.54 n. miles) the obscurity is described as fog; when greater than 1,100 yards it is known as mist.

Visibility. Although the use of such terms as fog, mist and haze is suitable for a general indication of the state of visibility in the ww code or in the text of a ship's logbook, a more precise method is needed in weather messages to indicate to the meteorologist the degree of obscurity of the atmosphere, irrespective of the reason that causes it. (The cause is given under the heading of "weather", e.g., ww = 05 indicates haze, ww = 10 indicates mist.) On land, observations are made of a number of selected objects at fixed distances, the distances increasing roughly in such a way that each distance is nearly double the next smaller distance. The determination of the most distant object of the series which is visible on any given occasion constitutes the observation of visibility. At sea such a detailed determination of visibility is not usually possible, but in making estimates of visibility a coarser scale is used, as shown below.

VISIBILITY SCALE FOR USE AT SEA

Code Figure		Code Figure	
90	Less than 55 yards	95	2,200 yards
91	55 yards	96	2.2 nautical miles
92	220 yards	97	5.4 nautical miles
93	550 yards	98	10.8 nautical miles
94	1,100 yards	99	27 nautical miles or more

Note 1. If the distance of visibility is between two of the distances given in the table, the code figure for the shorter distance is reported.
Note 2. The prefix "9" before each of the scale numbers appears here because this table is part of a code for reporting visibility in two figures by radio (see *Ships' Code and Decode Book* (Met. O. 509) or *Admiralty List of Radio Signals*, Vol. 3).

In a long vessel the determination of the lowest numbers 90, 91 offers no

difficulty as objects at known distances may be used. Visibility numbers 92 to 94 indicate conditions of obscurity such that the visibility is greater than the length of the ship but is not sufficient to allow full speed to be maintained. The only means of obtaining observations for the higher numbers of the scale are as follows. When coasting and when fixes can be obtained, the distance of points when first sighted, or last seen, may be measured from the chart. In the open sea, when other ships are sighted, visibility may be calculated if the time is taken when another ship is first and last seen and the relative velocity of the two ships is known (ships fitted with radar can, of course, obtain these distances directly). It is customary to use the horizon to estimate visibility numbers 96, 97, although this cannot be relied upon. There are cases of abnormal refraction when the visible horizon may be very misleading as a means of judging distances, particularly when the height of the eye is great, as in the case of an observer on the bridge of a large liner.

The estimation of visibility at night is very difficult. What the meteorologist is interested in knowing is the degree of transparency of the atmosphere. But the distance seen at night depends on the amount of illumination; and the distance at which a light is seen depends on its intensity or candle-power. If there is no obvious change in meteorological conditions, the visibility just after dark will be the same as that recorded just before dark irrespective of the fact that one may not be able to see as far. A deterioration in visibility can sometimes be detected afterwards and the visibility figure adjusted accordingly. In doing this, care must be taken not to confuse the effect of a decrease in illumination, as for example when the moon sets, with a genuine decrease in visibility. The presence of a "loom" around the vessel's navigation lights is frequently a guide to deteriorating visibility.

CHAPTER 5

Clouds and Cloud Height by Estimation

A normal observation of cloud at sea involves:

- (i) The identification of the cloud types present.
- (ii) An estimation of the height of the base of the lowest cloud in the sky.
- (iii) An estimation of the amount of all cloud of type C_L (or C_m , if no C_L).

The fundamental distinction in structure, which has great significance for forecasting, is between "layer" or "sheet" clouds, and "heap" clouds, i.e. clouds with marked vertical development. Examples of the latter are cumulus, sometimes known as the "wool pack" or "cauliflower" cloud, and cumulonimbus, the "thundercloud" or "anvil" cloud. In the further classification of sheet or layer clouds the consideration of height is taken into account, but the classification is not strictly one of height so much as of appearance. The main classification is into ten types as follows:

Sheet clouds

Approximate limits (see also page 50)

{ Cirrus	(Ci)	} Base above 18,000 feet
{ Cirrocumulus	(Cc)	
{ Cirrostratus	(Cs)	
{ Altocumulus	(Ac)	} 6,500 to 18,000 feet
{ Altostratus	(As)	
{ Nimbostratus*	(Ns)	
{ Stratocumulus	(Sc)	} Base below 6,500 feet
{ Stratus	(St)	

Heap clouds (with vertical development)

Cumulus	(Cu)
Cumulonimbus	(Cb)

Descriptions of the different types are given below.†

Cirrus (Ci). Detached clouds of delicate and fibrous appearance, without shading, generally white in colour, often of a silky appearance. Cirrus appears in the most varied forms, such as isolated tufts, lines drawn across a blue sky, branching feather-like plumes, and curved lines ending in tufts. These lines are often arranged in bands which cross the sky in lines and which, owing to the effect of perspective, appear to converge to a point on the horizon, or to two opposite points (i.e., polar bands). Cirrostratus and cirrocumulus often take part in the formation of these bands. Before sunrise and after sunset, cirrus is sometimes coloured bright yellow or red. Owing to their great height cirriform clouds are illuminated long before other clouds and fade out much later. Observation of cirrus at night is difficult but, if thick and extensive, it may be noted by its dimming effect on stars.

*See footnote on page 49.

†See after page 56 for cloud photographs. It will be noted that these are arranged in order of "Cloud type" according to the specifications of the code for reporting cloud. (Pages 48-50.)

Cirrocumulus (Cc). A cirriform layer or patch composed of small white flakes or of very small globular masses, without shadows, which are arranged in groups or lines, or more often in ripples resembling those of the sand on the sea-shore.

In general, cirrocumulus represents a degraded state of cirrus and cirrostratus, both of which may change into it. In this case the changing patches often retain some fibrous structures in places. Real cirrocumulus is uncommon. It must not be confused with small altocumulus on the edges of altocumulus sheets. In the absence of any other criterion the term cirrocumulus should only be used when:

- (i) there is evident connection with cirrus or cirrostratus,
- or (ii) the cloud observed results from a change in cirrus or cirrostratus.

Cirrostratus (Cs). A thin whitish veil, which does not blur the outlines of the sun or moon, but gives rise to haloes. Sometimes it is quite diffuse and merely gives the sky a milky look; sometimes it more or less distinctly shows a fibrous structure with disordered filaments. Cirrostratus may be observed at night by noting the slight diffusion of light around each star, whose brilliance is at the same time dimmed. It is almost impossible to differentiate between thick cirrus and cirrostratus at night in the absence of moonlight.

Altocumulus (Ac). A layer or patches, composed of laminae or rather flattened globular masses, the smallest elements of the regularly arranged layers being fairly small and thin, with or without shading. These elements are arranged in groups, in lines, or waves, following one or two directions and are sometimes so close together that their edges join.

When the edge or a thin translucent patch of altocumulus passes in front of the sun or moon a corona appears. This phenomenon may also occur with cirrocumulus and with the higher forms of stratocumulus. Irisation or iridescence is another possibility with altocumulus. (See also pages 94 and 103.)

The limits within which altocumulus is met are very wide. At the greatest heights, when made up of small elements, it resembles cirrocumulus; altocumulus however is distinguished by not being either closely associated with cirrus or cirrostratus or evolved from one of these types. It is often associated with altostratus and either form may change into the other.

Two important varieties of altocumulus are "altocumulus castellanus" and "altocumulus lenticularis". Altocumulus castellanus is a variety peculiar to a thundery state of the atmosphere, and is sure evidence of high-level instability. In this form, individual cloudlets are extended vertically upwards in heads or towers, like small cumuli. The lenticular variety of altocumulus has clouds of an ovoid or lens shape, with clear-cut edges and sometimes showing irisations. It occurs frequently over mountainous country and in "föhn", "scirocco" and "mistral" winds. It may also often be seen after the passage of weak cold fronts.

Altostratus (As). Striated or fibrous veil, more or less grey or bluish in colour. This cloud is like thick cirrostratus, but does not show halo phenomena; the sun or moon shows vaguely, with a gleam, as though through ground glass. Sometimes the sheet is thin with forms intermediate with cirrostratus. Sometimes it is very thick and dark, perhaps even completely obscuring the sun or moon. In this case differences of thickness may cause relatively light patches between very dark parts; but the surface never shows real relief, and the striated or fibrous structure is always seen in places in the body of the cloud. Every gradation is observed between high altostratus and cirrostratus on the one

hand and low altostratus and nimbostratus on the other. In practice it is important to distinguish between altostratus (thin) through which the sun or moon is visible and altostratus (thick) which completely obscures the sun or moon.

Nimbostratus (Ns). A low, amorphous (i.e., without form), and rainy layer, of a dark grey colour and nearly uniform; feebly illuminated seemingly from inside. Precipitation from nimbostratus is nearly always "continuous"; but precipitation is not a sufficient criterion. Cloud may be described as nimbostratus before precipitation has started. There is often precipitation which does not reach the ground; in this case the base of the cloud is always diffuse and looks "wet" on account of the general trailing precipitation, "virga",* so that it is not possible to determine precisely the limit of its lower surface.

Nimbostratus is usually the result of a progressive lowering and thickening of a layer of altostratus. Beneath nimbostratus there is generally a progressive development of very low ragged clouds (scud). These clouds are usually referred to as pannus, fractocumulus (Fc), or fractostratus (Fs).

Stratus (St). A uniform layer of cloud, resembling fog but not resting on the ground. When this very low layer is broken up into irregular shreds it is designated fractostratus (Fs). A veil of true stratus generally gives the sky a hazy appearance which is very characteristic, but which in certain cases may cause confusion with nimbostratus. When there is precipitation the difference is manifest; stratus cannot give the continuous precipitation usually associated with nimbostratus. When there is no precipitation a dark and uniform layer of stratus can easily be mistaken for nimbostratus. The lower surface of nimbostratus, however, has always a wet appearance (widespread trailing precipitation or virga); it is quite uniform and it is not possible to make out definite details. Stratus on the other hand has a "drier" appearance and, however uniform it may be, it shows some contrasts and some lighter transparent parts. Stratus is often a local cloud and, when it breaks up, the blue sky is often seen.

The name fractostratus is given to stratus which is broken up into patches and also to lifted fog, that is fog which has been lifted from the surface to become broken cloud.

Stratocumulus (Sc). A layer or patches composed of rounded masses or rolls; the smallest of the regularly arranged elements are fairly large; they are soft and grey, with darker parts. These elements are arranged in groups, in lines, or in waves, aligned in one or two directions. Very often the rolls are so close that their edges join together; when they cover the whole sky as on the continent, especially in winter, they have a wavy appearance. The difference between stratocumulus and altocumulus is essentially one of height. A cloud sheet called altocumulus by an observer at a small height may appear as stratocumulus to an observer at a considerably greater height.

Stratocumulus may form by the spreading out of cumulus. This happens over land in the evening when the day-time cumulus clouds begin to spread out prior to dissolving. Another example is when developing cumulus meets a pronounced inversion layer. If unable to penetrate this layer the cloud spreads out horizontally in the form of stratocumulus.

*Latin; Virga—streak, bough or broom.

Cumulus (Cu). Thick clouds with vertical development; the upper surface is dome-shaped and exhibits rounded protuberances, while the base is nearly horizontal. When the cloud is opposite to the sun the surfaces normal to the observer are brighter than the edges of the protuberances. When the light comes from the side the clouds exhibit strong contrasts of light and shade; against the sun, on the other hand, they look dark with a bright edge. True cumulus is definitely limited above and below, and its surface often appears hard and clear-cut; but one may also observe a cloud resembling ragged cumulus in which the different parts show constant change. This cloud is called **fractocumulus (Fc)**. Cumulus, whose base is horizontal, clear-cut and generally of a grey colour, has a uniform structure, that is to say it is composed of rounded parts right up to its summit, with no fibrous structure. Even when highly developed, cumulus can produce only light precipitation.

Cumulus having but small vertical development and little individual extent is known as “fair weather cumulus” to distinguish it from the ordinary “large cumulus”.

Cumulonimbus (Cb). Heavy masses of cloud, with great vertical development, whose cumuliform summits rise in the form of mountains or towers, the upper parts having a fibrous texture and often spreading out in the shape of an anvil. The base of the cloud resembles nimbostratus, and one generally notices “virga” (trailing precipitation). This base has often a layer of very low ragged clouds below it (**pannus**).

Cumulonimbus clouds generally produce showers of rain or snow, and sometimes of hail or soft hail, and often thunderstorms as well. If the whole of the cloud cannot be seen, the fall of a real shower is enough to characterise the cloud as a cumulonimbus. A cumulonimbus cloud may cover the whole sky, in which case the base alone is visible and resembles nimbostratus from which it is difficult to distinguish. If the cloud mass does not cover all the sky and if even small portions of the upper parts of the cumulonimbus appear, the difference is evident. In other cases the distinction can only be made if the preceding evolution of the clouds has been followed or if precipitation occurs. Cumulonimbus gives showers whereas nimbostratus is associated with continuous precipitation.

The lower surface of cumulonimbus sometimes has an udder-like or mammilated appearance which is referred to as “mammato cumulus”. When a layer of menacing cloud covers the sky and mammatus structure and trailing precipitation are both seen it is a sure sign that the cloud is the base of a cumulonimbus, even in the absence of all other signs.

The clouds which develop in the rear of depressions are often cumulonimbus. However, by the spreading out of the upper parts of this cloud and the dissolving of the lower parts, altocumulus or stratocumulus can form. Dense cirrus will develop when the cirriform upper parts of cumulonimbus spread out.

Making the observations. The aspect of the sky is continually changing and the cloud formations in evidence at one particular time may not be typical, that is to say they may not be easily recognisable from the standard descriptions given above. If, however, the observer watches the sky over a period of time he will often find that doubtful cloud forms may be referred to a previous state of development that was typical. Hence the first rule in cloud observing—watch the sky as often as possible and not merely at the time of observation.

Coding the observations. The forecaster who eventually receives and uses the

observer's reports does not merely want to know what clouds are present. It has been found that certain distributions or arrangements of clouds in the sky, in other words certain "states of sky", are of particular significance. The observer is required to report these rather than the presence of a particular cloud form. These states of sky are as follows, separate specifications being used for low, medium and high cloud.

SPECIFICATION OF FORM OF LOW CLOUD (C_L) (Sc, St, Cu, Cb)

Code

Figure

- 0 No Stratocumulus, Stratus, Cumulus or Cumulonimbus.
- 1 Cumulus with little vertical extent and seemingly flattened, or ragged Cumulus other than of bad weather,* or both.
- 2 Cumulus of moderate or strong vertical extent, generally with protuberances in the form of domes or towers, either accompanied or not by other Cumulus or by Stratocumulus, all having their bases at the same level.
- 3 Cumulonimbus the summits of which, at least partially, lack sharp outlines, but are neither clearly fibrous (cirriform) nor in the form of an anvil; Cumulus, Stratocumulus or Stratus may also be present.
- 4 Stratocumulus formed by the spreading out of Cumulus; Cumulus may also be present.
- 5 Stratocumulus not resulting from the spreading out of Cumulus.
- 6 Stratus in a more or less continuous sheet or layer, or in ragged shreds, or both, but no Stratus fractus of bad weather.*
- 7 Stratus fractus of bad weather* or Cumulus fractus of bad weather, or both (pannus), usually below Altostratus or Nimbostratus.
- 8 Cumulus and Stratocumulus other than that formed from the spreading out of Cumulus; the base of the Cumulus is at a different level from that of the Stratocumulus.
- 9 Cumulonimbus, the upper part of which is clearly fibrous (cirriform), often in the form of an anvil; either accompanied or not by Cumulonimbus without anvil or fibrous upper part, by Cumulus, Stratocumulus, Stratus or pannus.
- / Stratocumulus, Stratus, Cumulus and Cumulonimbus invisible owing to darkness, fog, blowing dust or sand, or other similar phenomena.

SPECIFICATION OF FORM OF MEDIUM CLOUD (C_M) (Ac, As, Ns)

Code

Figure

- 0 No Altocumulus, Altostratus or Nimbostratus.
- 1 Altostratus, the greater part of which is semi-transparent; through this part the sun or moon may be weakly visible, as through ground glass.

*"Bad weather" denotes the conditions which generally exist during precipitation and a short time before and after.

- 2 Altostratus, the greater part of which is sufficiently dense to hide the sun or moon, or Nimbostratus.*
- 3 Altocumulus, the greater part of which is semi-transparent; the various elements of the cloud change only slowly and are all at a single level.
- 4 Patches (often in the form of almonds or fishes) of Altocumulus, the greater part of which is semi-transparent; the clouds occur at one or more levels and the elements are continually changing in appearance.
- 5 Semi-transparent Altocumulus in bands, or Altocumulus in one or more fairly continuous layers (semi-transparent or opaque), progressively invading the sky; these Altocumulus clouds generally thicken as a whole.
- 6 Altocumulus resulting from the spreading out of Cumulus (or Cumulonimbus).
- 7 Altocumulus in two or more layers, usually opaque in places, and not progressively invading the sky; or opaque layer of Altocumulus, not progressively invading the sky; or Altocumulus together with Altostratus or Nimbostratus.*
- 8 Altocumulus with sproutings in the form of small towers or battlements, or Altocumulus having the appearance of cumuliform tufts.
- 9 Altocumulus of a chaotic sky, generally at several levels.
- / Altocumulus, Altostratus and Nimbostratus invisible owing to darkness, fog, blowing dust or sand or other similar phenomena, or more often because of the presence of a continuous layer of lower clouds.

SPECIFICATION OF FORM OF HIGH CLOUD (C_H) (Ci, Cs, Cc)

Code
Figure

- 0 No Cirrus, Cirrocumulus or Cirrostratus.
- 1 Cirrus in the form of filaments, strands or hooks, not progressively invading the sky.
- 2 Dense Cirrus, in patches or entangled sheaves, which usually do not increase and sometimes seem to be the remains of the upper part of a Cumulonimbus; or Cirrus with sproutings in the form of small turrets or battlements, or Cirrus having the appearance of cumuliform tufts.
- 3 Dense Cirrus, often in the form of an anvil, being the remains of the upper parts of Cumulonimbus.
- 4 Cirrus in the form of hooks or of filaments, or both, progressively invading the sky; they generally become denser as a whole.
- 5 Cirrus (often in bands converging towards one point or two opposite points of the horizon) and Cirrostratus, or Cirrostratus alone; in either case, they are progressively invading the sky, and generally growing denser as a whole, but the continuous veil does not reach 45 degrees above the horizon.

*For synoptic purposes nimbostratus is included among the medium clouds in the code since it is continuous with the altostratus existing above it and has been formed as a result of a progressive lowering of altostratus from medium cloud level.

- 6 Cirrus (often in bands converging towards one point or two opposite points of the horizon) and Cirrostratus, or Cirrostratus alone; in either case, they are progressively invading the sky, and generally growing denser as a whole; the continuous veil extends more than 45 degrees above the horizon, without the sky being totally covered.
- 7 Veil of Cirrostratus covering the celestial dome.
- 8 Cirrostratus not progressively invading the sky and not completely covering the celestial dome.
- 9 Cirrocumulus alone, or Cirrocumulus accompanied by Cirrus or Cirrostratus, or both, but Cirrocumulus is predominant.
- / Cirrus, Cirrocumulus and Cirrostratus invisible owing to darkness, fog, blowing dust or sand or other similar phenomena, or more often because of the presence of a continuous layer of lower clouds.

The use of these specifications, instead of reporting each individual cloud form, effects an economy and is also advantageous to the forecaster, who knows how to associate a state of sky with a particular weather situation.

The estimation of cloud height. Apart from some ships of the Royal Navy and ocean weather ships, cloud height at sea is obtained by estimation. The first step in estimating cloud height consists of identifying the cloud as a type belonging to one of the three classes, low, medium or high. Low clouds have their bases below 6,500 feet. Medium cloud layers usually occur at levels between 6,500 and 18,000 feet, and high clouds are usually above 18,000 feet. As a rough guide, the heights of the bases of the various types of low cloud may be expected to be between the following limits:

Stratus	Usually below 2,000 feet and sometimes nearly down to the surface.
Nimbostratus	500 to 4,000 feet (usually below 2,000 feet in moderate rain or snow).
Cumulonimbus	2,000 to 5,000 feet.
Stratocumulus	1,500 to 4,500 feet.
Cumulus	1,500 to 5,000 feet.

These limits tend to be considerably higher in low latitudes; this applies particularly to high clouds.

It is difficult to estimate cloud height without much practice. The apparent size of the cloud elements is often an indication of height. For example, the lower the height of the individual cloudlets of an altocumulus layer, the larger they will normally appear. Layers having the appearance of altocumulus with large individual elements are often found at heights between 6,000 feet and 10,000 feet. The estimation of the height of stratified cloud, e.g., altostratus or nimbostratus, is particularly difficult. The lack of pronounced structure makes it easy to gain a false impression of height. Valuable experience can be gained on occasions when the observer knows that his ship is steaming towards a depression by watching the gradual lowering of the cloud base. The observer's impressions of the appearance of the sky in the successive stages of lowering will assist his judgment on future occasions. It is only by such experience that an observer can distinguish between a layer of nimbostratus in the lower middle band and a similar layer at, perhaps, only 2,000 to 3,000 feet.

Care must be taken before using the apparent speed of cloud as an index to

its height. This apparent speed depends not only on the velocity of the wind at cloud level but also on the course and speed of the ship itself.

When coasting, cloud height may sometimes be estimated by comparison with the height of the mountains or hills in the background. In using this method, however, it should be remembered that cloud is usually lower over the hills than elsewhere and that it is the general level over the sea that is required.

The estimation of cloud amount. The amount of cloud was in the past estimated as the number of tenths of sky covered. At a conference of the International Meteorological Organization (Washington 1947) it was recommended that amount of cloud be reported in eighths instead of tenths. This change of procedure was brought into force with the introduction of the revised International Code (Washington) on 1st January 1949.

In making the observation it is necessary to stand in a position affording an uninterrupted view of the whole sky. To make an estimate for the whole sky at once requires practice and is rather difficult at first. It is convenient to imagine the sky divided into quadrants by two arcs drawn at right angles through the zenith.

Each quadrant represents two eighths of the total sky. If we choose the most appropriate of the figures—

0 = Clear or almost clear of cloud

1 = About half covered

2 = Completely or almost completely covered with cloud—

for each separate quadrant, then the total amount of cloud for the whole sky is obtained simply by adding the amounts in the separate quadrants.

At night the observation of total cloud amount is noted by observing which stars are showing and which are obscured. It is more difficult to differentiate between low, middle and high clouds and reliable observation depends upon the degree of illumination and the experience of the observer.

CHAPTER 6

Ocean Waves

The complex nature of wave motion at sea. The action of wind in producing waves is not precisely understood. The effect of the wind varies from the tiny ripples ruffled on a pond by the merest breath of air to the mighty rollers of the North Atlantic and Roaring Forties. All ocean waves, other than those caused by movements of the sea floor, and tidal effects, owe their origin to the generating action of the wind. Wave motion, however, may persist even after the generating force has disappeared, being then slowly dissipated by frictional forces.

An observer of the motion of the sea surface at a particular place will, in general, notice a complicated wave form such as is shown in Fig. 27 (page 56), which may be regarded as the result of the superposition of a number of simple regular wave motions having different lengths and speeds.

The ideal observer is an instrument known as a wave-recorder which registers automatically the up and down motion of the water surface and enables a record such as Fig. 27 to be drawn. This record can be analysed or split up into its component simple waves. Wave-recorders can only be effectively used from the shore or from stationary ships and hence it is not possible to measure sea disturbance in general by this method although it would be most desirable to do so.

The distinction between sea and swell. The system of waves raised by the local wind blowing at the time of observation is usually referred to as "sea". Those waves not raised by the local wind blowing at the time of observation, but due either to winds blowing at a distance or to winds that have ceased to blow, are known collectively as "swell". Usually, one component of the swell dominates the rest, but occasionally two component wave-motions crossing at an angle may be observed. These are referred to as "cross swells". Sea and swell may both be present at the same time and the sea may be from a different direction and have different period and height to the swell, or both sea and swell may be from the same direction.

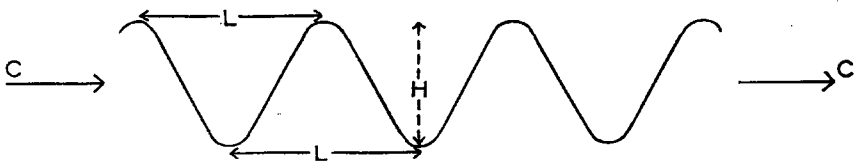


FIG. 24. Characteristics of a simple wave

The characteristics of a simple wave. The following definitions are used in describing a simple wave:

- (i) **SPEED, C** , usually expressed in knots, is the speed at which individual waves travel.
- (ii) **LENGTH, L** , expressed in feet, is the horizontal distance between successive crests or successive troughs.

- (iii) PERIOD, T, expressed in seconds, is the time interval required for the passage of successive crests (or successive troughs) past a given point.
- (iv) HEIGHT, H, expressed in feet, is the vertical distance between the top of a crest and the bottom of a trough.

The following relations are found to hold for a simple wave:

$$\text{Speed} = 3.1 \times \text{Period}$$

$$\text{Length} = 5.1 \times (\text{Period})^2.$$

(In application to actual sea waves, which are not simple, the constant 5.1 should be reduced by a factor ranging between about $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{2}{3}$.)

By means of these formulae, measurements of one of the variables can be used to calculate the other two. The following table gives these relations numerically for different wave periods:

<i>Period</i> (secs)	<i>Length</i> (feet)	<i>Speed</i> (knots)
2	20.4	6.2
4	81.6	12.4
6	183.6	18.6
8	326.4	24.8
10	510.0	31.0
12	734.4	37.2
14	999.6	43.4
16	1305.6	49.6
18	1652.4	55.8
20	2040.0	62.0

There is no inherent theoretical relation between the height and period of a simple wave. We can imagine the height to be varied at will, the period (and hence length and speed) remaining constant. In real wave motion, however, in which many simple waves are superposed there is a further consideration that enables us to see how the height is limited. If we call the quotient H/L the "steepness" of the wave, it is found that the mean steepness does not increase beyond 7.6 per cent. (1/13). If the mean steepness is less than this figure then the waves are capable of absorbing more energy from the wind, thus increasing their height relative to their length. When the limiting steepness is reached, surplus energy received from the wind is dissipated by the breaking of the waves at the crests (white horses). This limiting value of the steepness explains why the mean maximum height of the sea waves is roughly in proportion to their length; for example, wind driven waves of length 400 feet (period 9 seconds) would not be expected to have a mean maximum height greater than 30 feet. If the wave-length were about 500 feet (period 10 seconds) this limiting value of the mean maximum height would be increased to 40 feet. On the other hand, long swells, perhaps 1,000–2,000 feet in length, may have heights of less than a foot.

When the height of the wave is small compared with its length, the wave profile can be adequately represented by a simple sine curve. As the height becomes relatively greater, however, it is seen that the crests become sharper and the troughs much more rounded, the precise profile being a curve known as a "trochoid". This is the curve that would be traced on a bulkhead by a marking point fixed to the spoke of a wheel, if we imagined the wheel to be roiled along under the deckhead.

In Fig. 25 the large circle represents the wheel and P the marking point on a

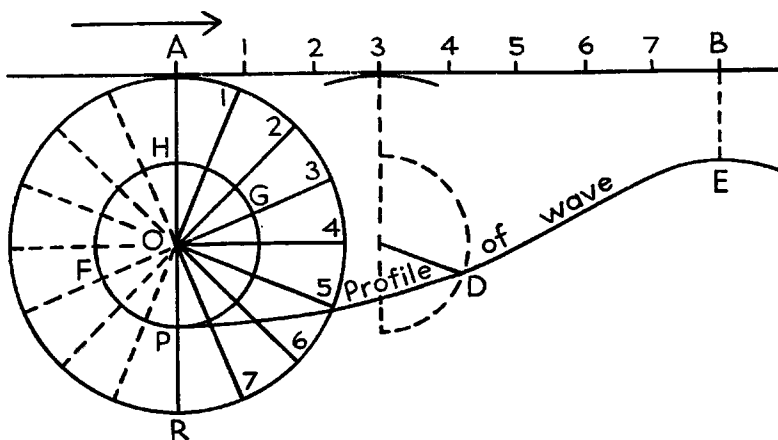


FIG. 25. Representation of a trochoidal wave form

spoke, OP, the distance from the axle being called the tracing arm. The arrow shows the direction in which the circle rolls and in which the wave is supposed to be travelling. AB is the base, i.e., the straight line under which the circle is to roll, the length AB being equal to the half circumference of the wheel, AR.

Now as the circle rolls, when position 3 of the circle reaches position 3 of the base, the semi-circle FPG will be in the position shown by the dotted semi-circle; and the marking point P will coincide with the point D, having described part of a trochoid PD. When the circle has completed half a revolution, the marking point P will coincide with E, having described the trochoid curve PDE which is half a wave-length; the diameter POH represents the height of the wave. The nearer the marking point is to the axle of the wheel, the flatter will be the trochoid.

In an ideal wave each water particle revolves with uniform speed in a circular orbit, perpendicular to the wave ridge (the diameter of the orbital circles being the height of the wave) and completes a revolution in the same time as the wave takes to advance its own length. At a wave-crest the motion of the particles is wholly horizontal, advancing in the same direction as the wave; at mid-height on the front slope it is wholly upwards; in the trough it is again horizontal but in the opposite direction to the travel of the wave, and at mid-height on the back slope it is wholly downwards. This motion may be seen by watching a floating object at the passage of a wave. The object describes a circle but is not carried bodily forward by the wave.

The disturbance set up by wave-motion must necessarily extend for some distance below the surface; but its magnitude decreases very rapidly in accordance with a definite law, the trochoids becoming flatter and flatter as the depth increases, and the water particles revolving in ever-decreasing circles. At a depth of one wave-length the disturbance is less than a five-hundredth part of what it is at the surface, so that the water at that depth may be considered undisturbed. The motion associated with the largest ocean waves is inappreciable at even moderate depths, as is demonstrated by experience in submarines.

Wave groups. Experience shows that waves generally travel in groups with patches of dead water in between, the wave height being a maximum at the centre of each group. We have said earlier that any observed wave motion can be regarded as built up from a number of simple wave forms. Let us consider, for example, the superposition of two simple wave motions having the same height but slightly different periods. If the crests of the two wave motions are made to coincide at the initial point of observation the height of the resultant wave will be twice that of each component wave. To each side of this point, however, owing to the difference of period, the additive effect becomes less until a point is reached where the heights of the component waves, being of different sign, completely annul each other's effect. Beyond this point the heights again become additive until the troughs of the component waves coincide. In other words, there is a variation of height superposed on the ordinary wave motion. It can also be shown that two simple wave trains moving in slightly different directions give a resultant pattern composed of "short-crested" waves as distinct from the "long-crested" waves of simple wave motions.

The speed of a wave group is not the same as that of the individual waves comprising it. Each individual wave in its turn emerges from the dead water in the rear of the group, travels through the group and subsides in the dead water ahead of it. The speed of the wave group must therefore be less than the speed of an individual wave. Both theoretical considerations and experience show that the wave group travels at one half the speed of the individual waves.

The origin and travel of swell. Swell waves originate in the heavy seas created in a storm area. Short waves have an insufficient store of energy to enable them to travel long distances against the dissipating action of friction. Hence, in general, it follows that swell waves are long waves in comparison with the wind-driven waves at the place of observation.

In calculating the distance travelled by swell, care must be taken to distinguish between the speed of the individual waves and the speed of the wave groups. If, for example, a ship reports the sudden onset of waves whose speed, calculated from the period, is 30 knots, then another ship in the line of advance of these waves will experience their onset at a time obtained by allowing a speed of $\frac{1}{2} \times 30 = 15$ knots for the disturbance.

As swell travels its height decreases. Investigations by the National Institute of Oceanography show that if R is the distance from the point of generation in nautical miles then the amplitude at distance R is $\left(\frac{200}{R}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ of that at the point of generation by the wind. Thus, a swell would lose one half of its height in travelling a distance of 1,200 nautical miles. The long swells are the greatest travellers.

Waves in shallow water. All the previous remarks refer to waves in deep water. When a deep-water wave enters shallow waters it undergoes profound modification. Its speed is reduced, its direction of motion may be changed and, finally, its height increases until, on reaching a certain limiting depth, the wave breaks on the shore. Water may be regarded as shallow when the depth is less than half the length of the wave.

The decrease in speed when a wave approaches the shore accounts for the fact that the wave fronts become, in general, parallel to the shore prior to breaking. Fig. 26 shows a wave, approaching the shore at an angle, being refracted until it becomes parallel to the shore.

The same reasoning may be applied to explain how waves are enabled to bend round headlands and to progress into sheltered bays.

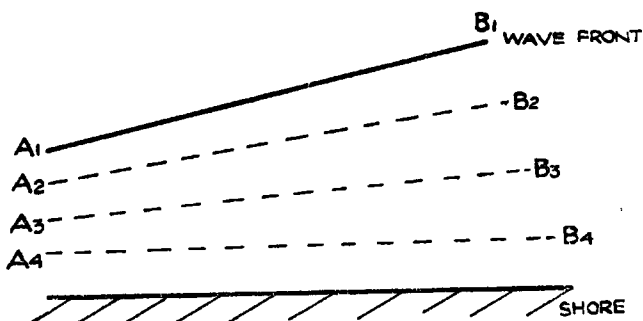


FIG. 26. Refraction of a wave approaching the shore at an angle

OBSERVING OCEAN WAVES

The inherent difficulties of observation. It has been remarked earlier that the ideal observer is a wave-recorder which can register automatically the up and down motion of the sea surface at a fixed point. A typical record is shown in Fig. 27.

The record is, in general, complex and shows immediately all the difficulties inherent in eye observation. For example, are all the waves to be considered on an equal footing or are only the big waves to be counted? Since the wave characteristics vary so much, what average values shall be taken? It is obvious that if comparable results are to be obtained the observer must follow a definite procedure. The flat and badly formed waves ("A" in Fig. 27) between the wave groups cannot be observed accurately by eye and different observers would undoubtedly get different results if an attempt were made to include them in the record. The method to be adopted, therefore, is to observe only the well-formed waves in the centre of the wave groups. The observation of waves entails the measurement or estimation of the following characteristics:

Direction Period Height

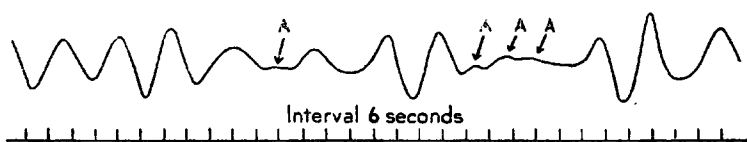


FIG. 27. Wave form of the sea-surface

Reliable average values of period and height can only be obtained by observing at least twenty waves. Of course these cannot be consecutive; a few must be selected from each succeeding wave group until the required number has been obtained. Only measurements or quite good estimates are required. Rough guesses have little value and should not be recorded.

It will often be found that there are waves coming from more than one direction. For example, there may be a sea caused by the wind then blowing and a swell caused by a wind that has either passed over or is blowing in a distant area. Or there may be two swells (i.e., cross swells) caused by winds



Eilean Ban, Kyle of Lochalsh

Photo by R. K. Pilsbury



Photo by C. E. Wallington

C_L1 Cumulus with little vertical extent. The cloud elements shown in the upper picture are in an early stage of development; they are small, shallow and have ragged edges. In the lower picture they are in a slightly more advanced stage and some show the characteristic domed tops.

G

CLOUD PLATE I



From Dale, Milford Haven

Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_L2 Cumulus of moderate or strong vertical extent. This is a further stage in the development of C_L1. The cloud has become much deeper and the tops are “cauliflower-shaped”. The outlines are clear-cut and there is no tendency for the upper parts of the cloud mass to become blurred or fibrous in texture. When the cloud is well developed, rain showers may occur. Stratocumulus cloud may also be present but it must be at the same level as the base of the Cumulus.



Near Tenby, Pembrokeshire

Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_L3 Cumulonimbus without anvil. Normally this is a further stage in the development of C_L2. The tops are beginning to acquire a fibrous appearance. When it is uncertain whether the cloud is C_L3 or C_L9, the latter should be selected if the cloud gives rise to lightning, thunder or hail. Cumulus, Stratocumulus or Stratus may also be present.



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_L4 Stratocumulus formed by the spreading-out of Cumulus. Cloud of this type forms when the upper parts of Cumulus clouds, which had previously been gaining height, can no longer do so and begin to spread out horizontally, forming a layer of Stratocumulus, as illustrated above. (See Plate XIV describing the formation of C_M6). Sometimes the spreading-out is only temporary and the Cumulus resume their growth above the stable layer.

Another type of C_L4 often occurs in the evening when convection ceases and, in consequence, the Cumulus begin to flatten, and assume the appearance of patches of Stratocumulus.



From Malahide, near Dublin

Photo by R. K. Pilsbury



Lough Gill, Co. Sligo

Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C₁5 Stratocumulus not formed by the spreading-out of Cumulus. The individual cloud masses may be separate and in the form of elongated bands or patches as shown in the upper picture, or they may be closed up into a continuous or nearly continuous layer, as shown in the lower photograph. Often the cloud is dark and heavy looking, but it can be light in tone when it is at a fairly high level, or when it is thin.



Benbulbin, Co. Sligo

Photo by R. K. Pilsbury



North Antrim

Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_L6 Stratus in a more or less continuous sheet or layer, or in ragged shreds, or both. The upper picture shows a layer of Stratus with its base about 350 feet above ground level, 1,100 feet above sea level. In the lower picture the ragged Stratus was formed from lifted sea fog.



Photo by G. A. Clarke



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_L7 Stratus Fractus of bad weather, or ragged Cumulus, or both, generally moving fast and changing shape rapidly. These clouds (known to mariners as “scud”) often form beneath a layer of Nimbostratus, as in the upper picture, or a layer of Altostratus, as in the lower picture.

CLOUD PLATE VI



Bridlington Bay

Photo by R. K. Pilsbury



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_{1,8} Cumulus and Stratocumulus, other than that formed from the spreading-out of Cumulus, with their bases at different levels. The base of the Cumulus is normally at the lower level and occasionally the tops may reach or penetrate the Stratocumulus, as illustrated above.



Photo by D. E. Watts



Photo by K. J. Norris

C_L9 Cumulonimbus with anvil. This is a massive cloud of great vertical depth and horizontal extent, having a frayed out, fibrous top in the shape of an anvil. It normally develops from C_L3 and commonly gives rise to thunderstorms and/or hail showers. Underneath the base of the cloud, which is often very dark, there are frequently low, ragged clouds, which in storms are only a few hundred feet above the surface. Occasionally the upper parts of the cloud merge with Altostratus or Nimbostratus. The lower picture shows the appearance which the base of a Cumulonimbus cloud presents when it is overhead. The downward hanging protuberances are due to turbulent down-draughts and are known as "mamma".



Photo by R. K. Filsbury

CM1 Thin Altostratus. The background cloud seen in the picture has probably developed from the thickening Cirrostratus associated with an approaching warm front. Most of the cloud sheet is light grey and semi-transparent with the sun shining weakly through it. The cloud below the Altostratus is Stratocumulus (C_{L5})



Caldy Island, Carmarthen Bay

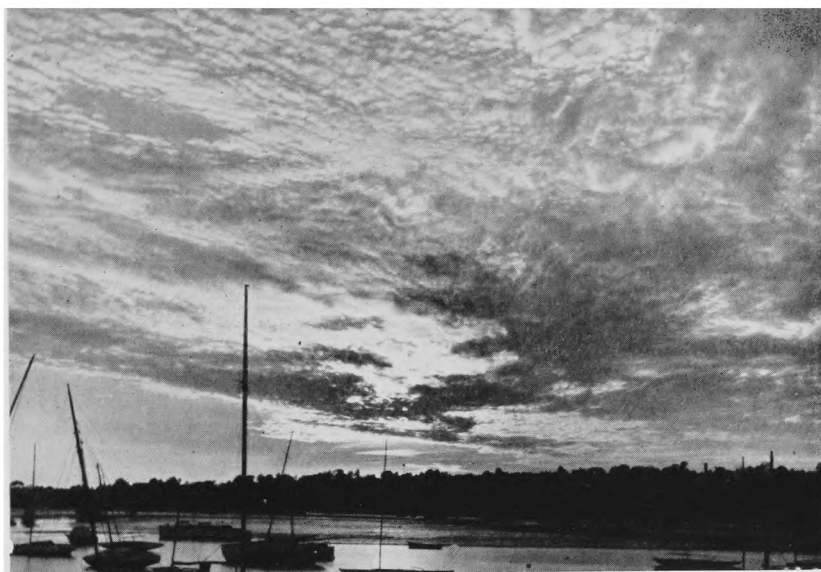
Photo by R. K. Pilsbury



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_M2 Thick Altostratus or Nimbostratus. This develops from thickening C_M1. If only the denser parts of the cloud hide the sun or moon it is defined as Altostratus; if the cloud is sufficiently opaque throughout to obscure them completely, it is Nimbostratus, as shown in the lower picture (with Stratus Fractus beneath the cloud layer).

CLOUD PLATE X



Bembridge, Isle of Wight

Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

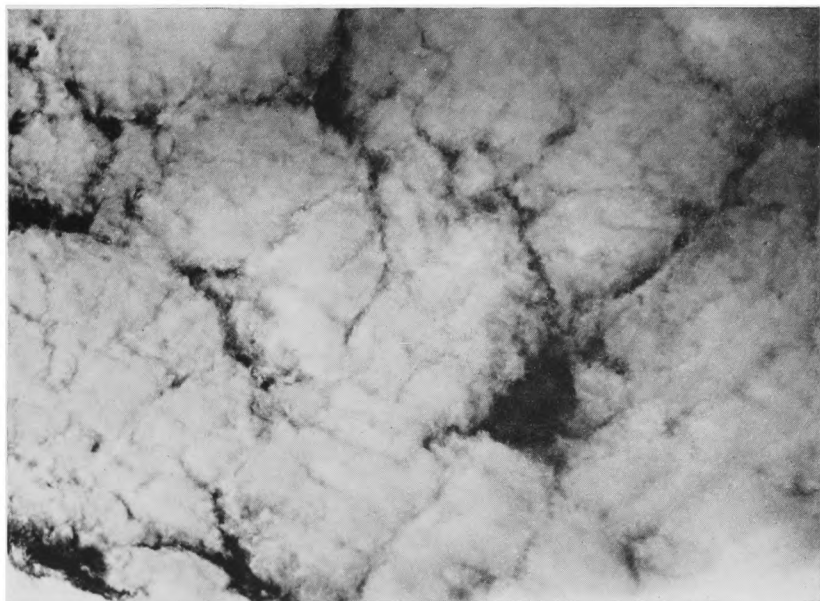


Photo by C. J. P. Cave

C_M3 Semi-transparent Altocumulus, at a single level, not invading the sky. The elements in the cloud sheet are small, rounded and more or less uniform; near the sun they are translucent. The sky may contain several Altocumulus patches of different opacity, as in the upper picture, or thin, lightly shaded sections as in the lower picture.

CLOUD PLATE XI



Photo by G. A. Clarke

C_M4 Altostratus lenticularis. The clouds shown in the picture are due to wave motion in the atmosphere and they are seen mainly over hilly country. At sea they are therefore likely to be seen only in certain coastal waters in the direction of the land. The cloud elements are smooth-looking and taper away towards the ends; they have bright translucent edges and show definite shading. In another variety of the cloud the elements are composed of fine granules and ripples lying in thin irregular patches, vaguely lenticular in shape and having fairly pronounced shading. Parts of the cloud near the sun often show the delicate colouring known as irisation.



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_M5 Altocumulus increasing and thickening. The essential feature of this cloud type is that it spreads from some particular direction on the horizon and increases in amount, perhaps finally covering the whole sky. It may be in one or more layers of varying degrees of density, some parts being translucent and others heavily shaded. Sometimes it may resemble Stratocumulus at a high level.



Photo by G. A. Clarke

C_M6 Altocumulus formed by the spreading out of Cumulus or Cumulonimbus. In certain atmospheric conditions,* the tops of these clouds reach a level above which they cannot rise, and they are compelled to flatten out horizontally, forming patches of Altocumulus of rather irregular thickness and shape, as shown in the picture. (Care should be taken not to confuse these with the anvil-shaped tops of Cumulonimbus.) If many large Cumulus-type clouds are present, the patches of Altocumulus, resulting from the spreading-out of their tops, may coalesce to form quite an extensive layer.

** When there is a marked temperature inversion in the atmosphere it acts as a barrier to air rising by convection.*



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_M7 Altocumulus not increasing. This type includes:

- (a) Patches, sheets or layers of Altocumulus at different levels, not increasing.
- (b) Patches, sheets or layers of Altocumulus at a single level, generally opaque, not increasing.
- (c) Altocumulus, together with Altostratus or Nimbostratus.

The upper picture shows type (c) with the Altocumulus merging with Altostratus near the horizon. Beneath the thick patch of Altocumulus, type (b), in the lower picture can be seen small pendant globules called "mamma".



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury



Photo by C. J. P. Cave

C_M8 Altocumulus castellanus and Altocumulus floccus. Both of these types are associated with developing thundery conditions over a wide area as opposed to thunderstorms arising from locally generated Cumulonimbus clouds. The upper picture shows a long line of typical Altocumulus castellanus in the distance; in the top half of the picture there are lines of Altocumulus in cumuliform tufts (Altocumulus floccus). The lower picture shows very ragged Altocumulus floccus in considerable quantity.

CLOUD PLATE XVI



Skye from Sound of Sleat

Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_M9 **Altocumulus of a chaotic sky**, generally at several levels. The main characteristic of the sky is its heavy and stagnant appearance. There are usually clouds of all medium types mixed with clouds of type C_L and C_H.



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_H1 Cirrus in hooks or filaments, not progressively invading the sky. The picture clearly shows the fibrous structure of Cirrus, with hooks at the ends of the fine strands. This type of Cirrus often occurs with other Cirrus clouds and should be classified as C_H1 only when the combined cover of all filaments, strands or hooks exceeds the total of other types of Cirrus present.



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_H2 Dense Cirrus. The Cirrus occurs in dense patches or entangled sheaves (upper picture), not usually increasing in amount. The two dense patches in the centre of the lower picture are typical examples. Sometimes the Cirrus is arranged in narrow bands, with sproutings in the shape of small turrets or battlements, or showing cumuliform tufts.

CLOUD PLATE XIX



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_{H3} Dense Cirrus from Cumulonimbus, often in the form of an anvil. These clouds are white and fibrous and may be entirely separate from the Cumulonimbus of which they were a part.



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_{H4} Cirrus invading the sky. These clouds can be seen as separate, delicate filaments with fibrous trails. The Cirrus elements in the picture are moving from left to right, invading the sky and thickening, but no Cirrostratus is present.



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_H5 Cirrus and/or Cirrostratus below 45° altitude. A whitish veil progressively invading the sky but less than 45° above the horizon from which the cloud is spreading. Cirrus of this type develops as a result of the continued spread of C_H4. The clouds in the upper part of the picture are Cirrus. Nearer the horizon the Cirrus has merged into a sheet of Cirrostratus.



Near Cloveaty, looking north

Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_H6 Cirrus and/or Cirrostratus above 45° altitude. The picture shows Cirrus thickening rapidly to Cirrostratus, already extending higher than 45° above the horizon. The main sheet of Cirrostratus is often preceded by long filaments or hooks of Cirrus, sometimes in bands across the sky.



Photo by R. K. Pillsbury

C_H7 Veil of Cirrostratus covering the whole sky. The cloud is usually light, uniform and nebulous, but it may be white and fibrous showing striations. It gives rise to halo phenomena round the sun or moon. Sometimes the veil is so thin that it is difficult to distinguish it from the blue sky, and halo phenomena may provide the only reliable evidence of its presence.



Photo by G. A. Clarke

C_H8 Cirrostratus not increasing and not covering the whole sky. The veil or sheet of cloud extends from one horizon but leaves a segment of blue sky in the other direction. The cloud either remains constant in amount or decreases. The picture shows a fairly dense sheet of Cirrostratus clearing away after the passage of a cold front.



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury



Photo by R. K. Pilsbury

C_H9 Cirrocumulus. This code figure is only used when the amount of Cirrocumulus is greater than any other types of Cirrus which may be present. The upper picture shows a typical example in the centre of the picture, the cloud elements being very much smaller than those found in Altocumulus. A few Cumulus clouds are also present. In the lower picture the elements are composed of small, ragged cumuliform tufts.

blowing from different directions in distant areas. In such cases the observer should distinguish between sea and swell, and report them separately, giving two groups for swell when appropriate.

The direction, height and period of the sea wave may be quite different from that of the swell wave. It will, however, often happen—particularly with winds of Beaufort force 8 and above—that the sea and swell waves are both coming from the same direction. In that case it is virtually impossible to differentiate between sea and swell and the best answer is to look upon the combined wave as being a sea wave and log it accordingly.

Observing waves from a moving ship. Care must be taken to ensure that the observations, especially those of period, are not influenced by the waves generated by the motion of the ship.

(i) **DIRECTION FROM WHICH THE WAVES COME.** This is easily obtained either by sighting directly across the wave front or by sighting along the crests of the waves and remembering that the required direction differs from this by 90 degrees. Direction is always recorded true, not magnetic.

(ii) **PERIOD.** For measurements of period a stopwatch is desirable. If this is not available an ordinary watch with a seconds hand may be used or, alternatively, a practised observer may count seconds.

The observer selects a distinctive patch of foam or a small object floating on the water at some distance from the ship, and notes the time at which it is on the crest of each successive wave. The procedure is repeated for the larger waves of each successive group until at least twenty observations are available. The period is then taken as the average time for a complete oscillation from crest to crest. In a fast ship it will be found that the “patch of foam” method will rarely last for more than one complete oscillation and that many waves have to be observed separately. With practice, suitable waves can easily be picked out and the timing from crest to crest becomes quite simple. When it is desired to use an object (an empty beer can is usually conspicuous against the sea and will remain afloat long enough to serve its purpose) it should be thrown as far forward as possible.

Another method available to the observer with a stopwatch is to observe two or more consecutive “central” waves of a wave group while the watch is running continuously, then to stop the watch until the central waves of the next wave group appear, the watch being then restarted. This procedure is repeated until at least twenty complete oscillations have been observed. The period is then obtained by dividing the total time by the number of oscillations. It is important to note that the periods between times of crests passing a point on the ship are not the ones required.

(iii) **HEIGHT.** Although wave-recorders are fitted to a few research ships, there is at present no method of measuring the height of waves suitable for general use on merchant ships, but a practised observer can make useful estimates. The procedure to be adopted depends on the length of the waves relative to the length of the ship. If the length of the waves is short in comparison with the ship's length, i.e., if the ship spans two or more wave crests, the height should be estimated from the appearance of the waves at or on the side of the ship, at times when the pitching and rolling of the ship is least. For the best result the observer should take up a position as low down the ship as possible, preferably amidships where the effect of pitching is least, and on the side of the ship towards which the waves are coming.

This method fails when the length of the waves exceeds the length of the ship, for then the ship rises bodily with the passage of each wave crest. The observer should then take up a position in the ship so that his eye is just in line with the advancing wave crest and the horizon, when the ship is vertical in the trough. The height of eye above the ship's water line is then the height of the wave. The nearer the observer is to an amidships position the less chance will there be of the measurement being vitiated by pitching. If the ship rolls heavily it is particularly important to make the observation at the moment when she is upright in the trough. Exaggeration of estimates of wave height is mostly due to errors caused by rolling. (See Fig. 28. When the ship is rolling (b), the observer at "o" has to take up a higher position to get a line on the horizon than when she is upright (a).)



FIG. 28(a)

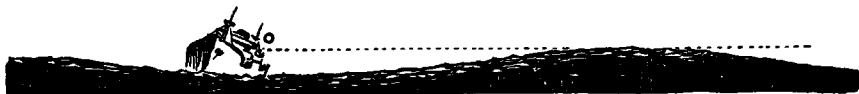


FIG. 28(b)

The observation of height of waves is most difficult when the length of the waves exceeds the length of the ship and their height is small. The best estimate of height can be obtained by going as near the water as possible, but even then the observation can only be rough. In making height estimates an attempt should be made to fix a standard of height in terms of the height of a man or the height of a bulwark, forecastle or well-known dimension in the ship. There is generally a tendency to overestimate the height of short waves and underestimate the height of long waves.

Estimating the height of a wave from a high bridge in a fast ship is a difficult job and much will depend on the skill and ingenuity of the observer; in many cases all one can hope for is a very rough estimate.

All estimates of wave height should be made preferably with the ship on an even keel so that the observer's height of eye is consistent.

The inherent difficulties already mentioned, together with the practical difficulties of estimation, make it essential that the recorded height be the average value of about twenty distinct observations. These observations should be made on the central waves of the more prominent wave groups.

Wave observations at night or in low visibility. Under these conditions the most that the observer can normally hope to record is direction and an estimate of height, or perhaps direction only, which would at least indicate the presence of waves. Such observations might be of considerable value in tropical waters in the hurricane season. It is only on very bright nights that the observation of period would be practicable.

Observing waves from weather ships. Wave-recorders, which can record the period and height of the waves, have been installed in the British ocean weather

ships. But even when no special instruments are carried, weather ships have the advantage of being able to "heave to" at will, thus securing the best conditions for wave observation. The methods outlined in (ii) may be used to better advantage than by ordinary merchant ships. For example, a floating object may be observed for a considerable time; it is not lost in the distance as occurs when the ship is moving.

In addition to these observations the height, length and period of waves can be determined from a stationary ship as follows:

(a) The estimation of wave height may be much assisted with the use of a dan buoy of known height.

(b) Length can be observed by streaming a buoy for such a distance astern that the crests of successive waves are simultaneously passing the buoy and the observer. The distance between the two is the wave-length.

(c) Period can be obtained by noting the time taken for the wave to travel the distance between the buoy and the observer.

By simple division the speed of the individual waves can be deduced.

The importance of wave observations. The study of ocean waves has only recently been put on a scientific basis by the utilization of an automatic method of recording and the subsequent analysis of the record into component simple waves. The establishment of a network of specially equipped observing stations would probably add much to our present knowledge of the generation, transmission and decay of ocean waves. The new method of recording has made evident the limitations of former methods of observation, including the use of sea and swell scales, and has indicated the necessity of obtaining quantitative observations of wave characteristics.

Of practical importance is the fact that quantitative wave observations may be used for identifying the approximate position of a storm centre when suitable weather observations are lacking. The use of swell as an indication of the approach of a tropical storm is well known. The forecasting of swell on exposed coasts, such as those of Morocco and Portugal, is of considerable value for the protection of coastal shipping and port installations. The accuracy of these forecasts depends largely on an adequate supply of reliable ships' observations. Statistics of the period and height of waves would be of value to naval architects particularly in respect of stability, rolling and behaviour of the ship structure in a seaway.

CHAPTER 7

Observations of Ocean Currents and Ice

OCEAN CURRENT OBSERVATIONS

The method of obtaining current observations is to calculate the difference between the dead reckoning position of the vessel, after making due allowance for leeway, and the position by a reliable astronomical, land, radio or electronic fix. The result is the set and drift experienced by the vessel during the interval since the previous reliable fix.

This method of observing set and drift of current has been the principal means of acquiring knowledge of the surface currents of the ocean, and with the increasing accuracy of navigation, and the accumulation of observations, much is being learnt about the subject. The list of atlases so far prepared is given on page 118. Very many more observations of currents are required because in large regions of all the oceans the number of observations available for these atlases is so small. Furthermore, on account of the seasonal variation to which currents are subject, it is most desirable that monthly charts should be published; this will only be possible when the number of available observations is considerably increased.

The set and drift found by the above method is that for a mean depth of about half the ship's draught. It will only be correct if the ship's speed through the water is accurately known, the steering good, the judgment of leeway sound, and the compass error accurately known. In estimating a ship's dead reckoning position, the speed, or distance run through the water, is always difficult to estimate; a compromise between log distance and distance by engine revolutions after due allowance for slip, gives perhaps the best results. For the purposes of computation of current roses, predominant and vector mean currents, information of current of all strengths, including weak ones and "nil" current, are equally important and, in fact, essential to give a true picture of the general current circulation.

The attention of marine observers is drawn to the pages at the end of the meteorological log, for the recording of the set and drift of all currents observed during a voyage. Observations of ocean current will be very welcome from any ship, whether reporting meteorological observations or not.

The surface current observations from the open ocean which are the most useful are those computed between two star fixes at twilight. This is because the fixes are accurate, the period between them short enough to make it probable that the ship has only experienced one current in the elapsed time, and also short enough to reduce any errors in the dead reckoning course and distance to a minimum. Reliable radio, radar and electronic fixes are also acceptable. Careful notes should be made of the method of obtaining each fix.

Noon-to-noon currents are generally acceptable though never quite so good as those from stars to stars. For one thing, the noon position, though it is normally taken by several officers, can only be regarded as a running fix, the accuracy of which may be dependent on a due appreciation of a current experienced between the morning sun sight and noon, the very element which we are trying to find. However, for practical purposes, when spread over 24 hours, this

error is probably negligible in the majority of cases, and the chief thing which spoils the accuracy of a current so computed is that the ship may have experienced two or more currents during the 24 hours. These may give a resultant quite different from its constituents. This is particularly so in a fast ship. Current observations from noon on one day to morning stars on the next or from evening stars on one day to noon on the next are, in general, acceptable. Currents worked between morning stars on two successive days or between evening stars on two successive days are acceptable and are preferred to noon-to-noon currents, but no current for a longer period than a "ship day", which may be $24\frac{1}{2}$ or even 25 hours, need be entered.

The inherent inaccuracies of the normal noon position, however carefully it is compiled, will have a disproportionate effect on a current compiled from morning stars to noon or from noon to evening stars, and any such currents are not accepted for the atlases and should not therefore be entered. Officers will, however, be aware that there are many occasions when a true fix is possible in daylight and the sun may be crossed with Venus, the moon or even Jupiter. Such a fix gives the enthusiastic observer of ocean currents a golden opportunity, especially when stars have been missed, and the presence of one or other of these bodies on a suitable bearing at noon will ensure the accuracy of the noon position, in which case a morning star to noon current would be acceptable.

It is necessary, however, to caution the over-enthusiastic officer against putting himself to needless trouble by working out currents which overlap or duplicate each other and which will consequently have to be discarded. For instance, suppose a ship gets the following positions:

- (1) Noon (a.m. sun, run up to meridian altitude)
- (2) Venus and sun in the afternoon
- (3) Stars about 7 p.m.
- (4) Stars about 5 a.m.
- (5) Sun and moon in the forenoon
- (6) Noon (a.m. sun, run up to meridian altitude)

this gives a variety of currents which could be worked but many of them would overlap. The ones most acceptable to us would be those between 2 and 3, 3 and 4, and 4 and 5, i.e., short periods between true fixes none of which fall in the period of a current already worked.

In recent years electronic and radio navigational aids have become so efficient that current observations from this type of fix, not overlapping another observation, can be valuable. However, the navigator is required to report the type and quality of the fix so that poor quality observations may be given a low rating.

When selecting currents for incorporation into the atlases we have to take into consideration the wind and weather. The dead reckoning required for these observations depends simply on the true course steered and the distance steamed through the water *since the observation from which the current is being computed*, making due allowance for leeway only. Some ships, such as loaded tankers, will make little leeway in any but the strongest wind, others, such as high sided ships flying light, will make a lot, and because of the uncertainty of the amount of leeway made by ships in winds of *force 6 and above* it had been our custom to give less weight to currents computed in such circumstances. However, we can now estimate the leeway from all the currents reported by individual ships if regular and accurate wind observations are also available.

The state of loading of the ship and the means of measuring her speed are also taken into consideration. Ships which measure their distance by engine revolutions only are bound to give an uneven performance when the propeller is not reasonably well immersed, i.e. when the ship is in light condition, and currents should not therefore be recorded in these circumstances.

When coasting and in sight of land, currents computed between shore fixes are most desirable. It should be ensured, however, that the ship is not being influenced by tides.

The current meter is the most accurate means of obtaining the direction and velocity of current both at the surface and in the depths, for it measures the rate at which the water passes it in much the same way as the patent log measures the rate at which it is being towed through the water by a ship. The direction is indicated by means of a compass attached to the meter, and thus positive measurements are obtained, but the use of this instrument is only practicable in surveying vessels and other special service ships. A ship needs to be anchored when the current meter is used.

ICE OBSERVATION

Attention is invited to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1960, Safety of Navigation, Regulations 2, 3 and 4 (*see* Chapter 14).

Provision for reporting ice is made in the Ships' International Meteorological Code. The reporting of sea ice in the synoptic weather report does not, however, supersede its reporting according to the International Convention for Safety of Life at Sea. Captains will give great assistance if they report observations of all ice sighted, by completing the appropriate pages in the logbook. Observing ships using the trans-North Atlantic tracks are requested to complete this form, not only when ice is encountered, but also when they have passed through the ice region during the ice season without encountering ice. Such a "nil" report is valuable, since it is desirable to determine, as far as possible, when tracks have been clear of ice. It will be useful if the dimensions of ice, including the height of bergs seen, can be given.

The following are the descriptive terms of the WMO Sea Ice Nomenclature which was officially adopted by the World Meteorological Organization in February 1968.

This nomenclature has been prepared with the particular needs of marine users in mind and therefore is in terms of sea-ice and ice of land origin found at sea. Nevertheless many of the terms apply with equal validity to lake ice and/or river ice. The ice terms are first arranged by subject for ease of identification and the meanings are then given in full in the alphabetical list.

ICE TERMS ARRANGED BY SUBJECT

1. Floating ice

The principal kinds are Sea ice, Lake ice, River ice and ice of land origin. (*See* also 4(c).)

2. Development

- (a) NEW ICE: includes Frazil ice, Grease ice, Slush and Shuga.
- (b) NILAS: may be sub-divided into Dark or Light Nilas and Ice Rind.
- (c) PANCAKE ICE.

- (d) YOUNG ICE: Grey or Grey-white ice.
- (e) FIRST-YEAR ICE: may be designated Thin/white, Medium and Thick.
- (f) OLD ICE: may be sub-divided into Second-year ice or Multi-year ice.

3. Forms of Fast Ice

- (a) FAST ICE: called Young Coastal ice in its initial stage.
- (b) ICE FOOT.
- (c) ANCHOR ICE.
- (d) GROUNDED ICE: includes Stranded ice and Grounded Hummock.

4. Pack Ice

- (a) ICE COVER.
- (b) CONCENTRATION: may be designated Compact, Consolidated, Very Close, Close, Open, Very Open pack ice, or Open Water or Ice-free.
- (c) FORMS OF FLOATING ICE: include Pancake ice, Floe, Ice Cake, Floeberg, Ice Breccia, Brash ice, Iceberg, Glacier Berg, Tubular Berg, Ice Island, Bergy bit and Growler.
- (d) ARRANGEMENT: see Ice Field, Ice Massif, Belt, Tongue, Strip, Bight, Ice Jam, Ice Edge, Ice Boundary, Iceberg Tongue.

5. Pack Ice motion processes

- (a) DIVERGING.
- (b) COMPACTING.
- (c) SHEARING.

6. Deformation processes

- (a) FRACTURING.
- (b) HUMMOCKING.
- (c) RIDGING.
- (d) RAFTING.
- (e) WEATHERING.

7. Openings in the ice

- (a) FRACTURE: see also Crack, Tide Crack and Flaw.
- (b) FRACTURE ZONE.
- (c) LEAD: includes Shore lead and Flaw lead.
- (d) POLYNIA: includes Shore polynya, Flaw polynya and Recurring polynya.

8. Ice-surface features

- (a) LEVEL ICE.
- (b) DEFORMED ICE: sub-divisions include Rafted ice, Ridge and Hummock.
- (c) STANDING FLOE.
- (d) RAM.
- (e) BARE ICE.
- (f) SNOW-COVERED ICE: includes Sastrugi and Snowdrift.

9. Stages of melting

- (a) PUDDLE.
- (b) THAW HOLES.
- (c) DRIED ICE.
- (d) ROTTEN ICE.
- (e) FLOODED ICE.

10. Ice of land origin

- (a) FIRN.
- (b) GLACIER ICE: see also Glacier, Ice Wall, Ice Stream, Glacier Tongue.
- (c) ICE SHELF: the seaward edge is termed an Ice Front.
- (d) CALVED ICE: see Iceberg, Ice Island, Bergy Bit and Growler.

11. Sky and air indications

- (a) WATER SKY.
- (b) ICE BLINK.
- (c) FROST SMOKE.

12. Terms relating to surface shipping

- (a) BESET.
- (b) ICE BOUND.
- (c) NIP.
- (d) ICE UNDER PRESSURE.
- (e) DIFFICULT AREA.
- (f) EASY AREA.
- (g) ICEPORT.

13. Terms relating to submarine navigation

- (a) ICE CANOPY.
- (b) FRIENDLY ICE.
- (c) HOSTILE ICE.
- (d) BUMMOCK.
- (e) ICE KEEL.
- (f) SKYLIGHT.

ICE TERMS ARRANGED IN ALPHABETICAL ORDER

AGED RIDGE. Ridge which has undergone considerable weathering. These ridges are best described as undulations.

ANCHOR ICE. Submerged ice attached or anchored to the bottom, irrespective of the nature of its formation.

BARE ICE. Ice without snow cover.

BELT. A large feature of Pack Ice arrangement; longer than it is wide; from 1 km to more than 100 km (62 miles) in width.

BERGY BIT. A large piece of floating Glacier Ice, generally showing less than 5 m above sea level (but more than 1 m/3 feet) and normally about 100–300 m² (120–360 square yards) in area.

BESET. Situation of a vessel surrounded by ice and unable to move.

BIG FLOE. See Floe.

BIGHT. An extensive crescent-shaped indentation in the Ice Edge, formed either by wind or current.

BRASH ICE. Accumulations of Floating Ice made up of fragments not more than 2 m (6½ feet) across, the wreckage of other forms of ice.

BUMMOCK. From the point of view of the submariner, a downward projection from the underside of the Ice Canopy; the counterpart of a Hummock.

CALVING. The breaking away of a mass of ice from an Ice Wall, Ice Front or Iceberg.

CLOSE PACK ICE. Pack ice in which the Concentration is 7/10 to 8/10 (6/8 to less than 7/8), composed of Floes mostly in contact.

- COMPACTED ICE EDGE.** Close, clear-cut Ice Edge compacted by wind or current: usually on the windward side of an area of Pack Ice.
- COMPACTING.** Pieces of Floating Ice are said to be compacting when they are subjected to a converging motion, which increases ice Concentration, and/or produces stresses which may result in ice deformation.
- COMPACT PACK ICE.** Pack ice in which the Concentration is 10/10 (8/8) and no water is visible.
- CONCENTRATION.** The ratio in tenths of the sea surface actually covered by ice to the total area of sea surface, both ice-covered and ice-free, at a specific location or over a defined area.
- CONCENTRATION BOUNDARY.** A line approximating the transition between two areas of Pack Ice with distinctly different Concentrations.
- CONSOLIDATED PACK ICE.** Pack Ice in which the Concentration is 10/10 (8/8) and the Floes are frozen together.
- CONSOLIDATED RIDGE.** A Ridge in which the base has frozen together.
- CRACK.** A Fracture which has not parted.
- DARK NILAS.** Nilas which is under 5 cm (2 inches) in thickness and is very dark in colour.
- DEFORMED ICE.** A general term for ice which has been squeezed together and in places forced upwards (and downwards). Sub-divisions are Rafted Ice, Ridged Ice and Hummocked Ice.
- DIFFICULT AREA.** A general qualitative expression to indicate, in a relative manner, that the severity of ice conditions prevailing in an area are such that navigation in it is difficult.
- DIFFUSE ICE EDGE.** Poorly defined Ice Edge limiting an area of dispersed ice: usually on the leeward side of an area of Pack-ice.
- DIVERGING.** Ice-fields or Floes in an area are subjected to diverging or dispersive motion, thus reducing ice Concentration and/or relieving stresses in the ice.
- DRIED ICE.** Sea ice from the surface of which melt-water has disappeared after the formation of Cracks and Thaw Holes. During the period of drying the surface whitens.
- EASY AREA.** A general qualitative expression to indicate, in a relative manner, that ice conditions prevailing in an area are such that navigation in it is not difficult.
- FAST ICE.** Sea Ice which forms and remains fast along the coast, where it is attached to the shore, to an Ice Wall, to an Ice Front, between shoals or grounded Icebergs. Vertical fluctuations may be observed during changes of sea level. Fast ice may be formed *in situ* from sea water or by freezing of Pack Ice of any age to the shore, and it may extend a few metres/yards or several hundred km/miles from the coast. Fast ice may be more than one year old and may then be prefixed with the appropriate age category (Old, Second-year, or Multi-year). If it is thicker than about 2 m (6½ feet) above sea level it is called an Ice Shelf.
- FAST-ICE BOUNDARY.** The demarcation at any given time between Fast Ice and Pack Ice or between areas of pack ice of different Concentrations. (Compare with Ice Edge.)
- FAST-ICE EDGE.** The demarcation at any given time between Fast Ice and Open Water.
- FINGER-RAFTED ICE.** Type of Rafted Ice in which Floes thrust "fingers" alternately over and under the other.

FINGER RAFTING. Type of rafting whereby interlocking thrusts are formed, each floe thrusting "fingers" alternatively over and under the other. Common in Nilas and Grey Ice.

FIRN. Old snow which has recrystallized into a dense material. Unlike snow, the particles are to some extent joined together but, unlike ice, the air spaces in it still connect with each other.

FIRST-YEAR ICE. Sea-ice of not more than one winter's growth, developing from Young Ice; thickness from 30 cm to 2 m (1–6½ feet). May be sub-divided into Thin First-year ice/white ice, Medium First-year ice and Thick First-year ice.

FLAW. A narrow separation zone between Pack Ice and Fast Ice, where the pieces of ice are in chaotic state, that forms when pack ice shears under the effect of a strong wind or current along the Fast-ice Boundary. (Compare with Shearing.)

FLAW LEAD. A passage-way between Pack Ice and Fast Ice which is navigable by surface vessels.

FLAW POLYNYA. A Polynya between Pack Ice and Fast Ice.

FLOATING ICE. Any form of ice found floating in water. The principal kinds of floating ice are Lake Ice, River Ice, Sea Ice, which form by the freezing of water at the surface, and Glacier Ice (ice of land origin) formed on land or in an Ice Shelf. The concept includes ice that is stranded or grounded.

FLOE. Any relatively flat piece of Sea Ice 20 m (66 feet) or more across. Floes are subdivided according to horizontal extent as follows:

Giant—over 10 km (6 miles) across.

Vast—2–10 km (1–6 miles) across.

Big—500–2,000 m (¼–1 mile) across.

Medium—100–500 m (330 feet–½ mile) across.

Small—20–100 m (66–330 feet) across.

FLOEBERG. A massive piece of Sea Ice composed of a Hummock, or a group of hummocks, frozen together and separated from any ice surroundings. It may float up to 5 m (about 16 feet) above sea level.

FLOODED ICE. Sea Ice which has been flooded by melt-water or river water and is heavily loaded by water and wet snow.

FRACTURE. Any break or rupture through Very Close Pack Ice, Compact Pack Ice, Consolidated Pack Ice, Fast Ice, or a single Floe resulting from deformation processes. Fractures may contain Brash Ice and/or be covered with Nilas and/or Young Ice. Length may vary from a few metres to many kilometres:

Large —More than 500 m (545 yards) wide.

Medium —200–500 m (220–545 yards) wide.

Small —50–200 m (55–220 yards) wide.

Very small—0–50 m (up to 55 yards) wide.

FRACTURE ZONE. An area which has a great number of fractures.

FRACTURING. Pressure process whereby ice is permanently deformed, and rupture occurs. Most commonly used to described breaking across Very Close Pack Ice, Compact Pack Ice and Consolidated Ice.

FRAZIL ICE. Fine spicules or plates of ice, suspended in water.

FRIENDLY ICE. From the point of view of the submariner, an Ice Canopy containing many large Skylights or other features which permit a submarine to surface. There must be more than ten such features per 30 n. miles (56 km) along the submarine's track.

- FROST SMOKE.** Fog-like clouds due to contact of cold air with relatively warm water, which can appear over openings in the ice, or leeward of the Ice Edge and which may persist while ice is forming.
- GIANT FLOE.** See Floe.
- GLACIER.** A mass of snow and ice continuously moving from higher to lower ground or, if afloat, continuously spreading. The principal forms of glacier are: Inland Ice Sheets, Ice Shelves, Ice Streams, Ice Caps, Ice Piedmonts, Cirque Glaciers and various types of Mountain (Valley) Glaciers.
- GLACIER BERG.** An irregularly shaped Iceberg.
- GLACIER ICE.** Ice in, or originating from, a Glacier, whether on land or floating on the sea as Icebergs, Bergy Bits or Growlers.
- GLACIER TONGUE.** Projecting seaward extension of a glacier, usually afloat. In the Antarctic glacier tongues may extend over many tens of km/miles.
- GREASE ICE.** A later stage of freezing than Frazil Ice when the crystals have coagulated to form a soupy layer on the surface. Grease Ice reflects little light, giving the sea a matt appearance.
- GREY ICE.** Young Ice 10–15 cm (4–6 inches) thick. Less elastic than Nilas and breaks on swell. Usually rafts under pressure.
- GREY-WHITE ICE.** Young Ice 15–30 cm (6–12 inches) thick. Under pressure more likely to ridge than to raft.
- GROUNDING HUMMOCK.** Hummocked Grounded-ice formation. There are single-grounded Hummocks and lines (or chains) of grounded hummocks.
- GROUNDING ICE.** Floating Ice which is aground in shoal water. (Compare with Stranded Ice.)
- GROWLER.** Smaller piece of ice than a Bergy Bit or Floeberg, often transparent but appearing green or almost black in colour, extending less than 1 m (3 feet) above the sea surface and normally occupying an area of about 20 m² (24 square yards).
- HOSTILE ICE.** From the point of view of the submariner, an Ice Canopy containing no large skylights or other features which permit a submarine to surface.
- HUMMOCK.** A hillock of broken ice which has been forced upward by pressure. May be fresh or weathered. The submerged volume of broken ice under the hummock, forced downwards by pressure, is termed a Bummock.
- HUMMOCKED ICE.** Sea Ice piled haphazardly one piece over another to form an uneven surface. When weathered has the appearance of smooth hillocks.
- HUMMOCKING.** The pressure process by which Sea Ice is forced into hummocks. When the floes rotate in the process it is termed screwing.
- ICEBERG.** A massive piece of ice of greatly varying shape, more than 5 m (16 feet) above sea level, which has broken away from a Glacier, and which may be afloat or aground. Icebergs may be described as tabular, dome-shaped, sloping, pinnacled, weathered or Glacier Bergs.
- ICEBERG TONGUE.** A major accumulation of Icebergs projecting from the coast, held in place by grounding and joined together by Fast Ice.
- ICE BLINK.** A whitish glare on low clouds above an accumulation of distant ice.
- ICE-BOUND.** A harbour, inlet, etc. is said to be ice-bound when navigation by ships is prevented due to ice, except possibly with the assistance of an ice-breaker.
- ICE BOUNDARY.** The demarcation at any given time between Fast Ice and Pack Ice or between areas of Pack Ice of different Concentrations. (Compare with Ice Edge.)
- ICE BRECCIA.** Ice pieces of different age frozen together.

- ICE CAKE.** Any relatively flat piece of Sea Ice less than 20 m (66 feet) across. A Small Ice Cake is less than 2 m ($6\frac{1}{2}$ feet) across.
- ICE CANOPY.** Pack Ice from the point of view of the submariner.
- ICE COVER.** The ratio of an area of ice of any concentration to the total area of sea surface within some large geographic locale; this locale may be global, hemispheric, or prescribed by a specific oceanographic entity such as Baffin Bay or the Barents Sea.
- ICE EDGE.** The demarcation at any given time between the open sea and Sea Ice of any kind, whether fast or drifting. It may be termed Compacted or Diffuse. (Compare with Ice Boundary.)
- ICE FIELD.** Area of Pack Ice consisting of any size of Floes, which is greater than 10 km (6 miles) across. (Compare with Patch.) May be designated as:
 Large —over 20 km (12 miles) across.
 Medium—15–20 km (9–12 miles) across.
 Small —10–15 km (6–9 miles) across.
- ICEFOOT.** A narrow fringe of ice attached to the coast, unmoved by tides and remaining after the Fast Ice has moved away.
- ICE-FREE.** No Sea Ice present. There may be some ice of land origin. (Compare with Open Water.)
- ICE FRONT.** The vertical cliff forming the seaward face of an Ice Shelf or other floating Glacier varying in height from 2–50 m ($6\frac{1}{2}$ –164 feet) or more above sea level. (Compare with Ice Wall.)
- ICE ISLAND.** A large piece of floating ice about 5 m (16 feet) above sea level, broken away from an Arctic ice shelf, having a thickness of 30–50 m (98–164 feet) and an area of from a few thousand square metres/yards to 500 km² (600 square yards) or more, and usually characterized by a regularly undulating surface which gives it a ribbed appearance from the air.
- ICE JAM.** An accumulation of broken River Ice or Sea Ice caught in a narrow channel.
- ICE KEEL.** From the point of view of the submariner, a downward-projecting ridge on the underside of the Ice Canopy; the counterpart of a Ridge. Ice keels may extend as much as 50 m (164 feet) below sea level.
- ICE LIMIT.** Climatological term referring to the extreme minimum or extreme maximum extent of the Ice Edge in any given month or period based on observations over a number of years. Term should be preceded by minimum or maximum. (Compare with Mean Ice Edge.)
- ICE MASSIF.** A concentration of Sea Ice covering hundreds of square km/miles, which is found in the same region every summer.
- ICE OF LAND ORIGIN.** Ice formed on land or in an Ice Shelf, found floating in water. The concept includes ice that is stranded or grounded.
- ICE PATCH.** An area of Pack Ice less than 10 km (6 miles) across.
- ICEPORT.** An embayment in an Ice Front, often of a temporary nature, where ships can moor alongside and unload directly on to the ice shelf.
- ICE RIND.** A brittle, shiny crust of ice formed on a quiet surface by direct freezing or from Grease Ice, usually in water of low salinity. Thickness to about 5 cm (2 inches). Easily broken by wind or swell, commonly breaking into rectangular pieces.
- ICE SHELF.** A floating ice sheet of considerable thickness showing 2–50 m ($6\frac{1}{2}$ –164 feet) or more above sea level attached to the coast. Usually of great horizontal extent and with a level or gently undulating surface. Nourished by annual snow accumulation and often also by the seaward extension

of land Glaciers. Limited areas may be aground. The seaward edge is termed an Ice Front.

ICE STREAM. Part of an inland ice sheet in which the ice flows more rapidly and not necessarily in the same direction as the surrounding ice. The margins are sometimes clearly marked by a change in direction of the surface slope but may be indistinct.

ICE UNDER PRESSURE. Ice in which deformation processes are actively occurring and hence of a potential impediment or danger to shipping.

ICE WALL. An ice cliff forming the seaward margin of a Glacier which is not afloat. An ice wall is aground, the rock basement being at or below sea level. (Compare with Ice Front).

LAKE ICE. Ice formed on a lake, regardless of observed location.

LARGE FRACTURE. See Fracture.

LARGE ICE FIELD. See Ice Field.

LEAD. Any Fracture or passage-way through Sea Ice which is navigable by surface vessels.

LEVEL ICE. Sea Ice which is unaffected by deformation.

LIGHT NILAS. Nilas which is more than 5 cm (2 inches) in thickness and rather lighter in colour than Dark Nilas.

MEAN ICE EDGE. Average position of the Ice Edge in any given month or period based on observations over a number of years. Other terms which may be used are mean maximum ice edge and mean minimum ice edge. (Compare with Ice Limit.)

MEDIUM FIRST-YEAR ICE. First-year ice 70–120 cm (27–47 inches) thick.

MEDIUM FLOE. See Floe.

MEDIUM FRACTURE. See Fracture.

MEDIUM ICE FIELD. See Ice Field.

MULTI-YEAR ICE. Old ice up to 3 m (10 feet) or more thick which has survived at least two summers' melt. Hummocks even smoother than in Second-year Ice, and the ice is almost salt-free. Colour, where bare, is usually blue. Melt pattern consists of large interconnecting irregular Puddles and a well-developed drainage system.

NEW ICE. A general term for recently formed ice which includes Frazil Ice, Grease Ice, Slush and Shuga. These types of ice are composed of ice crystals which are only weakly frozen together (if at all) and have a definite form only while they are afloat.

NEW RIDGE. Ridge newly formed with sharp peaks and slope of sides usually 40°. Fragments are visible from the air at low altitude.

NILAS. A thin elastic crust of ice, easily bending on waves and swell and under pressure, thrusting in a pattern of interlocking "fingers" (finger rafting). Has a matt surface and is up to 10 cm (4 inches) in thickness. May be sub-divided into Dark Nilas and Light Nilas.

NIP. Ice is said to nip when it forcibly presses against a ship. A vessel so caught, though undamaged, is said to have been nipped.

OLD ICE. Sea Ice which has survived at least one summer's melt. Most topographic features are smoother than on First-year Ice. May be sub-divided into Second-year Ice and Multi-year Ice.

OPEN PACK ICE. Pack Ice in which the ice Concentration is 4/10 to 6/10 (3/8 to less than 6/8), with many Leads and Polynyas, and the Floes are generally not in contact with one another.

OPEN WATER. A large area of freely navigable water in which Sea Ice is present in Concentrations less than 1/10 (1/8). When there is no Sea Ice present the area should be termed Ice-free, even though icebergs are present.

PACK-ICE. Term used in a wide sense to include any area of Sea Ice, other than Fast Ice, no matter what form it takes or how it is disposed.

PANCAKE ICE. Predominantly circular pieces of ice from 30 cm–3 m (1–10 feet) in diameter, and up to about 10 cm (4 inches) in thickness, with raised rims due to the pieces striking against one another. It may be formed on a slight swell from Grease Ice, Shuga or Slush or as a result of the breaking of Ice Rind, Nilas or, under severe conditions of swell or waves, of Grey Ice. It also sometimes forms at some depth, at an interface between water bodies of different physical characteristics, from where it floats to the surface; its appearance may rapidly cover wide areas of water.

POLYNIA. Any non-linear shaped opening enclosed in ice. Polynyas may contain Brash Ice and/or be covered with New Ice, Nilas or Young Ice; submariners refer to these as skylights. Sometimes the polynya is limited on one side by the coast and is called a Shore Polynya or by Fast Ice and is called a Flaw Polynya. If it recurs in the same position every year it is called a Recurring Polynya.

PUDDLE. An accumulation on ice of melt-water, mainly due to melting snow, but in the more advanced stages also to the melting of ice. Initial stage consists of patches of melted snow.

RAFTED ICE. Type of Deformed Ice formed by one piece of ice overriding another. (Compare with Finger-Rafting.)

RAFTING. Pressure processes whereby one piece of ice overrides another. Most common in New and Young Ice. (Compare with Finger Rafting.)

RAM. An underwater ice projection from an Ice Wall, Ice Front, Iceberg or Floe. Its formation is usually due to a more intensive melting and erosion of the unsubmerged part.

RECURRING POLYNIA. A Polynya which recurs in the same position every year.

RIDGE. A line or wall of broken ice forced up by pressure. May be fresh or weathered. The submerged volume of broken ice under a ridge, forced downwards by pressure, is termed an Ice Keel.

RIDGED ICE. Ice piled haphazardly one piece over another in the form of ridges or walls. Usually found in First-year Ice. (Compare with Ridging.)

RIDGED ICE ZONE. An area in which much Ridged Ice with similar characteristics has formed.

RIDGING. The pressure process by which Sea Ice is forced into Ridges.

RIVER ICE. Ice formed on a river, regardless of observed location.

ROTTEN ICE. Sea Ice which has become honeycombed and which is in an advanced state of disintegration.

SASTRUGI. Sharp, irregular ridges formed on a snow surface by wind erosion and deposition. On mobile Floating Ice the ridges are parallel to the direction of the prevailing wind at the time they were formed.

SEA ICE. Any form of ice found at sea which has originated from the freezing of sea water.

SECOND-YEAR ICE. Old Ice which has survived only one summer's melt. Because it is thicker and less dense than First-year Ice, it stands higher out of the water. In contrast to Multi-year Ice, summer melting produces a regular pattern of numerous small Puddles. Bare patches and puddles are usually greenish-blue.

SHEARING. An area of Pack Ice is subject to shear when the ice motion varies significantly in the direction normal to the motion, subjecting the ice to rotational forces. These forces may result in phenomena similar to a Flaw.

SHORE LEAD. A lead between Pack Ice and the shore or between Pack Ice and an Ice Front.

SHORE POLYNIA. A polynya between Pack Ice and the coast or between Pack Ice and an Ice Front.

SHUGA. An accumulation of spongy, white ice lumps, a few cm/inches across; they are formed from Grease Ice or Slush and sometimes from Anchor Ice rising to the surface.

SKYLIGHT. From the point of view of the submariner, thin places in the Ice Canopy, usually less than 1 m (3 feet) thick and appearing from below as relatively light translucent patches in dark surroundings. The under-surface of a skylight is normally flat. Skylights are called large if big enough for a submarine to attempt to surface through them (120 m/130 yards) or small if not.

SLUSH. Snow which is saturated and mixed with water on land or ice surfaces, or as a viscous floating mass in water after a heavy snowfall.

SMALL FLOE. See Floe.

SMALL FRACTURE. See Fracture.

SMALL ICE CAKE. See Ice Cake.

SMALL ICE FIELD. See Ice Field.

SNOW-COVERED ICE. Ice covered with snow.

SNOWDRIFT. An accumulation of wind-blown snow deposited in the lee of obstructions or heaped by wind eddies. A crescent-shaped snowdrift, with ends pointing downwind, is known as a snow barchan.

STANDING FLOE. A separate Floe standing vertically or inclined and enclosed by rather smooth ice.

STRANDED ICE. Ice which has been floating and has been deposited on the shore by retreating high water.

STRIP. Long narrow area of Pack Ice, about 1 km ($\frac{1}{2}$ mile) or less in width, usually composed of small fragments detached from the main mass of ice, and run together under the influence of wind, swell or current.

TABULAR BERG. A flat-topped Iceberg. Most tabular bergs form by calving from an Ice Shelf and show horizontal banding. (Compare with Ice Island.)

THAW HOLES. Vertical holes in Sea Ice formed when surface puddles melt through to the underlying water.

THICK FIRST-YEAR ICE. First-year Ice over 120 cm (4 feet) thick.

THIN FIRST-YEAR ICE/WHITE ICE. First-year Ice 30–70 cm (12–27 inches) thick.

TIDE CRACK. Crack at the line of junction between an immovable Ice Foot or Ice Wall and Fast Ice, the latter subject to rise and fall of the tide.

TONGUE. A projection of the Ice Edge up to several km/miles in length, caused by wind or current.

VAST FLOE. See Floe.

VERY CLOSE PACK ICE. Pack Ice in which the Concentration is 9/10 to less than 10/10 (7/8 to less than 8/8).

VERY OPEN PACK ICE. Pack Ice in which the Concentration is 1/10 to 3/10 (1/8 to less than 3/8) and water preponderates over ice.

VERY SMALL FRACTURE. See Fracture.

VERY WEATHERED RIDGE. Ridge with tops very rounded, slope of sides usually 20° to 30°.

WATER SKY. Dark streaks on the underside of low clouds, indicating the presence of water features in the vicinity of Sea Ice.

WEATHERED RIDGE. Ridge with peaks slightly rounded and slope of sides usually 30° to 40°. Individual fragments are not discernible.

WEATHERING. Processes of ablation and accumulation which gradually eliminate irregularities in an ice surface.

WHITE ICE. See Thin First-year Ice.

YOUNG COASTAL ICE. The initial stage of Fast Ice formation consisting of Nilas or Young Ice, its width varying from a few metres/yards up to 100–200 m (110–220 yards) from the shoreline.

YOUNG ICE. Ice in the transition stage between Nilas and First-year Ice, 10–30 cm (4–12 inches) in thickness. May be sub-divided into Grey Ice and Grey-white Ice.

Part III Phenomena

CHAPTER 8

The Observation of Phenomena

Introduction. The seaman has unusual opportunities for observing natural phenomena of all kinds. This can be made an interesting hobby, and the observer may be lucky enough, sooner or later, to make a rare, or even unique, observation, which if carefully observed and recorded, will contribute to scientific knowledge. The comparative frequency or rarity of certain phenomena is indicated in this and the four following chapters, as far as our present knowledge goes. Phenomena of unknown origin are occasionally seen at sea and these should be carefully observed and recorded.

It is however not only the rare observations which are of value. All meteorological phenomena, whether optical or general, are directly related to the state of the atmosphere and weather prevailing at the time, and their recording in the Remarks Column of the Meteorological Log or in the space provided for Additional Remarks, helps to complete the information given by routine observations. Also there is probably a good deal to be learnt yet about many of the more common phenomena, including their frequency and geographical distribution, for which it is obvious that all observations made in any part of the world should be put on record.

Hints are given in these chapters on the observations or measurements which are necessary if the phenomenon is to be correctly identified. Observations are much more valuable if accompanied by drawings or sketches, in black and white or colour, or by photographs. If there is not room in the log, the observations and sketches can be attached to it.

The more interesting and unusual observations and illustrations are published in *The Marine Observer*. Notes and sketches on phenomena which are outside the scope of the Meteorological Office are always sent on to the relevant authority for examination and comment.

Methods of observation. Some optical phenomena such as coronae and iridescent cloud appear to be very near the sun or moon. Those near the sun may not be seen at all unless the eyes are shaded from direct sunlight. Apart from this, optical phenomena such as halos, coronae, etc., viewed in the daytime, when the sky is often very bright, are more easily seen if the amount of light entering the eye is reduced, and sometimes a very faint halo, etc., can only be seen if this is done. The sky may be viewed through neutral-tinted glass of a light tone, such as the lightest of those on a sextant, or the reflection from black glass may be used, if available, or from a piece of ordinary glass painted on one side with black enamel or backed with black paper. If a pair of ordinary sun-glasses of suitable colour is available, this is the best method of all. Yellow-brown, not too deep, has been found to be very satisfactory. Glasses of this colour have the power of slightly increasing contrast, so as to show distant land more distinctly on a misty day. The natural colour of any phenomenon is, of course, modified by these. The same methods also give a better view of clouds, of the details in a bright cloud mass, or of the very faint extensions, near the limit of visibility, of cloud in a blue sky.

There is a useful tip for seeing any very faint light at night, which is near or just beyond the limit of direct visibility. Do not look directly at the object, or where you suspect it to be, but fix the attention on a point a little way above, below, or to the side of it. Then view the spot "out of the corner of the eye". Light will thus be seen that would otherwise be invisible or, if it is directly visible, it will appear brighter by this process of "averted" or "oblique" vision. This applies to very faint light of every sort, whether concentrated in a point or diffused, such as faint terrestrial lights, faint stars, comets' tails, all zodiacal light phenomena and the fainter parts of aurorae.

In the case of phenomena of considerable duration, it is best to make notes of the various appearances as they are seen to come into view, or of other changes, carefully recording the times throughout the progress of the phenomenon. This is preferable to trusting to the memory afterwards. Rough sketches can also be made at the time and subsequently worked up into finished drawings or sketches. If colour is to be used, notes of the various colours should be made at the time.

It is desirable that observations be accompanied by sketches and/or photographs, whenever possible. These will often show detail that cannot be put into words. Sketches may be made either in ink or in pencil; in some cases delicacy of shading or fine detail is better rendered in pencil. When chosen for reproduction in *The Marine Observer*, the sketches are redrawn on tracing linen to enable engraved blocks to be made for the printer. Although sketches in colour cannot be so reproduced in *The Marine Observer* they may be of value in amplifying the detail given in the written observation.

An accurate account of the size and relative positions of the main features of what is seen is the prime requirement. Angular measurements are necessary in many cases for the identification of the phenomenon, as explained in the subsequent chapters. These are best incorporated in the written observation, unless the accompanying sketch is purely a diagrammatic one.

Phenomena such as haloes, rainbows and waterspouts may be photographed, giving a sufficiently short exposure, such as would best show cloud detail. The best results, particularly in the case of coloured objects, can only be got by the use of colour film or panchromatic film of suitable speed with a suitable colour filter over the lens. The same remarks apply to mirage, which has very rarely been photographed, though there appears to be no reason why satisfactory results should not be obtained.

OBSERVATIONS BY RADAR

With radar sets working on 3 cm or 10 cm, having a suitable form of presentation (e.g., P.P.I.), echoes are obtained from rain up to distances of 50 miles or more. In this way showers, fronts and thunderstorms may be located and warning given of their approach. Echoes from cloud have been reported, but these are probably due to rain or drizzle within the cloud and not to the cloud particles themselves.

Objects at ground level or sea level are normally visible on the radar screen at distances a little beyond the geometrical horizon, owing to refraction. In certain conditions, however, much greater ranges are obtained. This occurs most frequently over the sea, and is due to a temperature inversion near the surface and/or a fall of humidity with height which causes reflection or abnormal refraction of the rays.

The reverse effect, i.e., a smaller degree of refraction than is usual—or sub-refraction—can occur owing to a very pronounced temperature lapse rate and/or an increase of humidity with height. Sub-refraction however is neither a very marked nor frequent phenomenon.

Ordinary meteorological fronts are not a major cause of abnormal radar ranges. Due to absorption of the radio energy, very heavy rain may tend to mask a radar target behind the rain area; this effect is unlikely to be significant on a wave-length of 10 cm but it may become important at shorter wave-lengths.

The use of radar as a means of detection of ice should be borne in mind. In normal meteorological conditions, echoes from most bergs should be detected at a useful range, but in certain meteorological conditions sub-refraction may occur and normal detection ranges be appreciably reduced. It has also been found that at times, even under favourable conditions, a very poor echo has been obtained from quite a large berg, the inclination of the slope presented to the observer apparently having an effect upon its reflecting properties, which is of as much account as the length or height of the berg. Bergy-bits, growlers or pieces of pack-ice, especially if smoothed by weathering, may pass undetected in strong sea clutter, even if they are large enough to sink or damage ships. On the other hand, in conditions where sea clutter is well marked, the cessation of such echoes may indicate the presence of pack-ice.

Radar can therefore only be considered as a valuable additional aid to the navigator in the detection of ice and it must be clearly understood that an absence of indication on the screen does not necessarily mean the absence of dangerous ice in the neighbourhood of the vessel.

CHAPTER 9

Astronomical Phenomena

ECLIPSES

Partial eclipses of the sun or moon provide interesting spectacles but afford no opportunity for the seaman to make observations of particular value. Little diminution in sunlight is perceived until more than half the sun's disc is covered by the moon. An appreciable fall of temperature occurs during a large partial eclipse of the sun.

A *total* eclipse of the *sun* is perhaps the grandest of all natural phenomena. While almost of annual occurrence, its visibility on any occasion is confined to a very small area, along a line usually less than 100 miles wide, so that in any fixed place it is in general very rare. The duration of the total phase is very short, usually from a few seconds up to about two minutes, though in very exceptional circumstances it may be considerably more, the possible maxima being nearly eight minutes. During totality the fall of temperature is marked; often the wind changes or springs up, if previously calm. The sky darkens and has a peculiar appearance, often with lurid cloud colours. During totality the bright planets and the brighter stars may be seen.

Very occasionally a ship at sea or in harbour may be on the line of totality and several of such observations have been received in the last 45 years. The seaman fortunate enough to witness such an eclipse should endeavour to record all that he sees in as full detail as possible. There is so much to see in such a short time that it is desirable for several persons to observe in company. At the instant the moon finally covers the round body of the sun normally seen, the solar corona will spring into view. This is an irregularly-extended atmosphere of the sun, pearly-white in colour, giving about half as much light as the full moon. It has a definite shape which varies according to the position of the year of observation in the 11-year cycle of solar activity (*see* under Sunspots). Near the time of maximum activity the corona is disposed fairly equally round the sun, with a definite structure of rays and bands, and sometimes curved forms like flower petals. Near the time of minimum activity the corona shows much less structural detail and the form is quite different. A wide band, more or less parallel sided, stretches outward from the equatorial region of the sun, one on each side of the sun, and these bands may extend a long distance, up to two or more solar diameters. At this time the polar regions usually show only a few short rays of coronal light. In the intermediate years of the solar cycle, the corona assumes forms intermediate between those described above.

Owing to the short duration of total solar eclipses and their comparative rarity, the total time for which the corona has been seen in the last 150 years is probably about two hours. Its exact form on any particular occasion is unpredictable. Marine observers can therefore make observations of real scientific value if the form, extent and detail of the corona is carefully noted and sketched. As the fainter extensions of the corona are best seen with the unaided eye and the structural detail is best seen with binoculars or a small telescope, it is best, especially when the duration of totality is short, to have two observers, each working in one of these different ways.

One or more of the great rose-red eruptions of hydrogen and calcium gas from the sun, known as prominences, may be seen adjacent to the moon's limb without optical assistance, especially if the sun is near its state of maximum activity. Unlike the corona, these may be seen in full sunlight on any day, by astronomers using special apparatus. Other features of a total eclipse on which attention may be concentrated are (i) meteorological effects, (ii) the changing colour effects of sky and cloud and the rapid onrush of the moon's shadow through the air as the total phase begins, (iii) the visibility of planets and stars.

The total phase of a *lunar* eclipse generally lasts a considerable time, sometimes for nearly two hours; the exact duration depends on how centrally the moon passes through the earth's shadow. The totally eclipsed moon usually remains visible, appearing of some shade of red or copper. Careful observation of this colour, and its changes, if any, during the total phase are of value. A general statement of the degree of brightness of the totally eclipsed moon should also be given, noting how far its surface markings remain visible. The totally eclipsed moon receives reddish sunlight by refraction through the section of the earth's atmosphere in profile to the moon at the time, and the amount and colour of the refracted light vary according to the cloudiness and other meteorological conditions in this part of the atmosphere. When fine dust in sufficient quantity is suspended in the air after a big volcanic eruption, the moon may almost, or even completely, disappear from sight during total eclipse. Such an observation should be carefully recorded, with all relevant detail.

COMETS

Comets are members of the Solar System, moving in elliptical orbits, in most cases so enormously elongated that the period of revolution round the sun may be hundreds or even thousands of years. A few return in a comparatively short time, one of these being the well-known Halley's Comet, with a period of about 76 years, last seen in 1910.

Comets are much less dense than planets, and consist of a loose aggregation of widely separated small solid bodies, ranging from the size of a grain of sand to that of small stones, probably with an admixture of larger pieces. The diameter of this collection is usually only a few hundred miles, but may be several thousand. Comets are only seen in that part of their orbit near the sun, when they shine partly by reflected light but mainly by the vaporising of the material of the comet by the sun's heat. An interesting feature of a comet is its tail, which is only formed when the comet is relatively near the sun. This consists of dust and gases ejected from the head, probably by light pressure and electrical repulsion. The tail of a large comet may be many millions of miles in actual length. The apparent length may be anything from a degree or two to 60° or 80° or more. The direction of the tail is from the comet's head away from the sun. This direction bears no relation to the direction of the movement of the head of the comet in its orbit. The tail of a comet, unlike the transitory trail of a meteor, therefore does not show the direction in which the comet has travelled.

Most comets never become bright enough to be seen without telescopic aid and some never develop tails, but a bright comet is a magnificent naked-eye spectacle. There should be no confusion between the appearance of a comet and a meteor. A meteor is only seen for a few seconds as it travels more or less rapidly over its apparent path in the sky. A comet remains apparently fixed among the stars and sets with them in due course. It has a continuous movement

relative to the stars, but in most cases this can only be seen in a naked-eye or binocular observation by comparing its position on successive nights. The period of naked-eye visibility of a comet may be anything from a few days to a number of weeks. It finally becomes invisible by either getting too faint, or passing into the daylight region of the sky or changing in declination so as to sink below the horizon.

Astronomers measure the position of the head of a comet relative to stars near it in the field of view of a telescope, or large-scale photographs may be taken. From a minimum of three such observations on successive nights, the comet's orbit in space and its subsequent apparent track in the sky can be computed. Angular distances of the comet from two or three bright stars, measured by sextant, are not sufficiently accurate for this purpose, but serve to identify the object and help in making an accurate sketch of the comet and its tail in relation to the stars. It may occasionally happen that more than one naked-eye comet is visible at the same time.

Valuable observations of a naked-eye comet may be made at sea, and it may happen that some interesting feature is seen which would not otherwise be put on record, if conditions of daylight or cloud make observations impossible in other parts of the world at that particular time. The brightness of the head and the form and length of the tail may sometimes change appreciably from night to night. The brightness of the head is estimated by comparison with that of neighbouring stars or planets, as described under *Novae*, below. The altitude of the comet's head should be given, as part of this observation, also notes on the state of the sky, such as whether thin cloud, haze, twilight or moonlight is present. Careful sketches of the form and length of the tail are valuable and should include details of the structure of the tail, if any are seen, stating whether the observation was made with the unaided eye, or with binoculars. The end of the tail usually fades very gradually into the dark sky and the method of averted vision (*see* page 74) can be used to see it as far as possible; binoculars will not show the fainter extension. It is of special importance to record any tails, other than the main one, which may be visible; these are normally on the same side of the head as the main tail, making various angles with it, and they are usually narrower and fainter than the main tail. On rare occasions a short tail pointing towards the sun may be seen, i.e., in a direction opposite to that of the main tail. If the comet shows any peculiarity of colour this should be noted.

THE ZODIACAL LIGHT AND ASSOCIATED PHENOMENA

The zodiacal light. This is observed as the cone-shaped extremity of an elongated ellipse of soft whitish light which extends from the sun as centre, extending above the westerly horizon in the evening or the easterly horizon in the morning. The best time for observation is just after the last traces of twilight have disappeared in the evening, or just before the first traces appear in the morning. The light retains its apparent place among the stars and gradually sets or rises with them. It is more brilliant in the tropics, but is very conspicuous even in temperate latitudes, if observed away from the glare of large towns.

The axis of the light lies in the zodiac, very nearly but not quite in the plane of the ecliptic. In tropical latitudes, where the ecliptic makes a large angle with the horizon at all times of the year, the light may be well seen on any clear night or morning in all months. In the temperate latitudes of the northern hemisphere it is best seen in the evenings of January to March and in the mornings of September to November.

The light is pearly and homogeneous and differs markedly in quality from that of the Milky Way, the brightest part of which it may considerably exceed in luminosity. Its luminosity decreases with altitude above the horizon, since its brightness is greater the nearer the observed point is to the sun's position below the horizon. It appears, however, to fall off in brightness near the horizon on account of the greater thickness of the atmosphere its light has to traverse. At any altitude the axis of the light is brighter than its lateral parts. In northern temperate latitudes the edge of the cone towards the north in azimuth is less well-defined than that towards the south and tends to spread northwards near the horizon.

The zodiacal light is believed to be a cosmic phenomenon, due to the reflection of the sun's light from dust or gaseous matter, extending outwards to a point somewhat beyond the earth's orbit. There is much that is not known about this phenomenon and new observations from all latitudes will be of real value. Any features of interest should be noted, such as the colour of the light and any irregularity of form or light distribution. Observations of its brightness will be of value, as it is not yet known whether this is constant on successive nights or in different years. Apparent changes of brightness often occur since the night sky is not always equally transparent. The presence of a bright planet, especially Venus, in the region of the light dims it considerably. Estimates of brightness should be made on moonless nights, after all twilight has disappeared, by comparing the light with that of the Milky Way, preferably at about the same altitude. The position of the Milky Way should be specified, as this varies markedly in brightness in different parts of the sky. Thus the light on a given night might be estimated to be twice as bright as the Milky Way in Cygnus.

Observations of the precise position of the light, about which there is still some uncertainty, may be made by a careful sketch of the cone showing the position of specified stars, either within, on the edge of, or outside the cone.

Zodiacal band and Gegenschein. Joining the apexes of the cones of the morning and evening zodiacal lights is an extremely faint luminous band, a few degrees wide, lying along or nearly along the ecliptic, called the zodiacal band. On this band, at a point very nearly or exactly 180° from the sun's position in the ecliptic, is a somewhat brighter and larger, but ill-defined patch, 10° or more in diameter, known by the German name "Gegenschein". This therefore is due south (in the northern hemisphere) at midnight, local time. These phenomena may be observed in temperate latitudes on the clearest moonless nights when at sufficient altitude; they are somewhat brighter in the tropics, on account of the greater altitude of the ecliptic. Further observations of these phenomena are much desired, especially from tropical localities. The track and width of the band, and the size, shape and position of the Gegenschein should be noted, together with variations of brilliancy and any special features seen, but the observation will be found difficult even to keen eyesight. The Gegenschein is usually invisible for the few nights on which it is projected upon the Milky Way in its annual journey round the ecliptic.

NOVÆ

Sometimes, quite unpredictably, a small star, usually a faint telescopic one, brightens up very much, within a few hours or a day or two at the most. This is, somewhat loosely, called a "nova" or "new star". While many of these never become visible to the naked eye, occasionally one does so and may even reach the first magnitude, or brighter, thus completely changing the aspect of the

constellation in which it appears. If conspicuous, a nova is generally mentioned in the newspapers. Should the marine observer hear of one, or discover one (in which case he will usually find he is not the first discoverer) he may be interested in following its changes of brightness. The normal history of a nova is that it remains at full brightness for a short time, probably a day or two at the most, and then very gradually decreases, the reduction in brightness being interrupted by slight temporary increases. If the star has attained the third magnitude or more it may remain visible to the naked eye for several weeks.

If the observer wishes to record the exact brightness of a nova (or other star) at any time, he may select a star of about the same altitude judged to be exactly of the same brightness. If no such star is available, he should select two stars of about the same altitude as the nova, one a little brighter and one a little fainter than the nova. He can then express the brightness of the nova in terms of the small interval of brightness between the two comparison stars. For example, it might be halfway between them in brightness, or one-third of the interval, counting from the brighter to the fainter, or one-quarter of the interval, counting from the fainter to the brighter. If such an observation is received, it can be easily converted into actual magnitudes, since the magnitudes of all naked-eye stars have been accurately determined. Both these methods break down if the star is much above the first magnitude, as suitable comparison stars would probably not be available. One or more of the bright planets, if visible, might, however, serve for this purpose.

An accurate observation of the magnitude of a nova, especially in its early stages when the brightness is changing quickly, may be of great value to astronomers, since no other observation might have been made anywhere else at the same time.



[SUNSPOTS

It is very dangerous to the sight to look at the sun, either with or without optical aid, without using smoked or deeply-tinted glass to reduce the light. This applies even when the sun is in partial eclipse. The only exception is when the sunlight is greatly weakened by passage through fairly thick fog, especially when the sun is at low altitude.

The number and size of sunspots varies in different years. Over a period of years solar activity, of which the occurrence of large sunspots is one manifestation, rises to a maximum and subsequently falls to a minimum. The time between successive maxima varies considerably, but averages about 11 years. For several years around the time of maximum activity, spots are frequently large enough to be seen without optical aid; sometimes two or more are so visible at the same time. Around the time of minimum activity, spots are either very small or completely absent. The life of an individual spot may be anything from a few days to several weeks.

Owing to the sun's rotation on its axis, a spot previously formed, and coming into view at the sun's eastern limb, will appear to cross the disc in about 14 days, if it lasts so long. Apparent changes of position of the spots on the sun's disc take place during the day, but are merely due to the observer's changing angle of view. The imaginary line forming the horizontal diameter of the sun at noon appears to be tilted upward between sunrise and noon and downward between noon and sunset, the most extreme tilting occurring at sunrise and sunset.

Daily photographs of the sun through telescopes are taken at one or other

of the astronomical observatories throughout the world. While marine observers may find it interesting to see the spots and note their changes of form and position on successive days, especially in years of maximum solar activity, it is not necessary to make sketches of them in the logbook as these can never be accurate enough to have any scientific value.

Solar flares. Near certain sunspots there occur areas which undergo sudden increases in brightness; these are called flares. They are best seen by means of special instruments which give a picture of the sun's surface in red hydrogen light. Some of the greatest solar flares have, however, been observed as increases in the total white light of the sun; seen in this way, a flare lasts for a few minutes and has about the same area as a large sunspot. The first such observation of a bright patch on the sun's surface was made in 1859 and several flares have been similarly observed since then. The appearance of flares cannot be predicted, but they are more numerous at times of maximum solar activity (as measured by the numbers of sunspots).

The increase in light intensity during a flare is particularly strong in the ultra-violet part of the spectrum (the part beyond the visible violet light to which our eyes are not sensitive). The blast of ultra-violet light emitted from a solar flare produces several detectable effects in the high atmosphere of the earth.

Associated with the increase in light intensity during a flare, there is ejection of material particles from the region of the flare out into space. This material shoots out at speeds of about 200 to 400 miles per second, which probably increases as the material gets further from the sun. If moving in the appropriate direction, this material causes interesting effects in the high atmosphere. Some of the high atmospheric effects of solar flares are described in the next chapter.

CHAPTER 10

Phenomena of the High Atmosphere

Regions of the high atmosphere. The high atmosphere of the earth is classified into regions according to the degree of ionization of the atoms of the atmospheric gases at the level concerned, that is, according to the electrical conductivity. In the lower atmosphere, air is a very good electrical insulator, i.e., its conductivity is very low. In the high atmosphere, however, many of the atoms are ionized so that the air is electrically conducting. The classification into regions depends on the different degrees of conductivity and other electrical properties at the different levels. There are three regions at the following approximate heights: the *D* region, between 30 and 50 miles up; the *E* region, between 50 and 80 miles; and the *F* region above 80 miles.

Short-wave radio fadeouts. Long-distance radio transmission in the short-wave band (in the frequency range say from 3 to 30 megacycles per second) is normally achieved by reflection of the radiation from the *F* region, the main influence of the *D* and *E* regions being to absorb some of the energy of the radio waves. When the blast of ultra-violet light from a solar flare reaches the earth it increases the ionization in the *D* region, however, and this increased ionization causes absorption of short-wave signals, reducing the signal strength considerably or even causing a complete fadeout of the received signals. Such a short-wave radio fadeout can occur only on the daylight hemisphere of the earth; it usually lasts for about twenty minutes.

Sudden enhancements of atmospherics. Lightning flashes in the lower atmosphere are a source of radio noise, detected over a wide range of frequencies as the crackles called atmospherics. Thunderstorms and lightning flashes are most numerous in the tropics, and transmission round the earth to higher latitudes of the resultant radio noise is by means of reflection from the various conducting regions of the high atmosphere. For the long wave part of atmospherics (in the frequency range below 100 kilocycles per second) it is the *D* region which acts as the reflector. Following a solar flare and the consequent increased ionization in the *D* region, the reflection of long-wave atmospherics is suddenly improved and the noise level of atmospherics may rise to as much as double its normal value. The rise takes place in a few minutes and the level remains high for an hour or two.

Short-wave radio blackouts. When the material ejected from the sun during solar flares, and at other times, reaches the earth, it affects the electrical properties of the *F* region in such a way that it ceases to act as a good reflector for short-wave radio. This effect is called an ionospheric storm. It is most severe in high latitudes because the material particles coming from the sun are electrically charged and are guided to the polar regions by the earth's magnetic field. Being often, though not always, connected with solar flares, ionospheric storms are more frequent during solar activity maximum. The short-wave radio blackout associated with a severe ionospheric storm may last for several days.

Magnetic disturbances. The earth's magnetic field is almost entirely of internal origin, being most probably produced by electric currents flowing in the molten material of the core, but there is a small part of it (less than one-hundredth) which can be attributed to electric currents flowing in the high

atmosphere. It is believed that these currents flow mainly in the *E* region. The daily heating of the atmosphere by the sun causes the currents to go through a regular daily cycle of change. These regular changes are very small in most places and cannot be detected by an ordinary compass needle, the maximum change of direction of the needle during a day being about one-fifth of a degree of arc.

Quicker changes occur at the times of short-wave radio fadeouts, but they also are too small to be detected by a compass needle. They are known as magnetic crochets or as solar flare effects.

Much larger deviations can occur, however. They are the result of large, irregular changes in the *E* layer currents, called magnetic storms, which occur in conjunction with ionospheric storms and short-wave radio blackouts in high latitudes. Like the ionospheric storms of the *F* region, these *E* region magnetic storms are caused by the arrival of the material particles ejected from the sun during solar flares and at other times.

If the magnetic storm be severe, the compass needle may be deflected continuously in one direction, to the extent of about half a degree, for some hours. In more intense storms the needle may oscillate one degree or more on either side of its normal position, and such oscillation may continue for as long as ten or twenty minutes before dying out. Further oscillation may occur after a period of quiescence. Deviations of 2° or more have been known, but are rare. During the great magnetic storm of 25th January, 1938, a deviation of 4° eastward was observed off the Portuguese coast.

NOCTILUCENT CLOUDS

About one hour after sunset on clear summer nights, rather lovely clouds with delicate filigree patterns very like cirrus may be seen to slowly appear in the darkening northern sky. These are the noctilucent or luminous night clouds. What is most remarkable about the clouds is their height. They are situated at an altitude of about 50 miles, far above all ordinary clouds. At this great height, the clouds remain sunlit long after sunset; they are seen by the sunlight they reflect and become visible when the sky background is sufficiently dark. They cannot be seen by day, since the light they reflect is minute compared with the light scattered by the daylight sky.

The clouds are of a pearly-white colour and often show a bluish tinge. They are classified in the following forms:

TYPE I. Veils. A tenuous, usually structureless background to other forms, rather like cirrostratus clouds.

TYPE II. Bands. Long streaks with diffuse edges (Type IIa) or sharply defined edges (Type IIb) often occurring in groups arranged roughly parallel to each other.

TYPE III. Billows. Closely spaced short bands in the form of waves.

TYPE IV. Whirls. Contorted forms indicating turbulence at the cloud level.

The clouds have been observed only in latitudes higher than 45°N and most frequently in latitudes 55° to 60°N. They appear only in the summer months and most frequently during the weeks following the summer solstice. There are indications that the distribution and behaviour of the clouds in the southern hemisphere is similar to that in the north, though, for obvious reasons, observations are few.

The clouds were at first thought to consist of volcanic dust that had been projected to great heights at the time of a great eruption and had collected below the inversion of temperature that exists above a height of 50 miles. It was later claimed that volcanic dust could hardly penetrate so high in the atmosphere and that the clouds therefore were more likely to be formed from dust arising from the burning up of meteors in their passage through the atmosphere near the level of the clouds. During recent summers, however, direct evidence indicating that the cloud particles are ice crystals has been obtained from rockets carrying sampling surfaces, which were exposed as the rocket penetrated the clouds. The ice crystals are likely to have formed on a nucleus of cosmic origin. Physically therefore the clouds are no different from cirrus clouds and their appearance certainly supports this view.

Systematic observation of the clouds over the globe is only now being organized with a view to investigating more fully their distribution with respect to latitude and longitude, their spatial extent and the seasonal frequency of their occurrence.

Observers should record (i) the night of occurrence specified by two dates, e.g., 20–21 June 1968, and the latitude and longitude of the place of observation; (ii) the period(s) of time, GMT, during which the clouds were observed; (iii) the forms present, types I to IV as defined above; (iv) the horizontal and vertical extent expressed in degrees of azimuth and elevation, at specified times, say every quarter hour, half hour, or hour during the night. This information is best conveyed by drawing a rough sketch showing the configuration of the cloud elements and the coordinates, elevation and azimuth of the visible boundaries of the cloud, i.e., the maximum and minimum elevations in different azimuths and the limiting azimuths, east and west of north.

Photographs are of great value. With fast monochrome film, exposure times are of the order of 15 to 20 seconds at $f/3.5$; with colour film of rating ASA 25, exposure times are 30 to 60 seconds at $f/3.5$. It is advisable to take several photographs at different exposures. The time at which photographs are taken should be recorded to the nearest minute.

Mother-of Pearl Cloud. In some winters, in very clear sky, after the passage of a large, deep depression to the region of northern Scandinavia, a high form of cloud, known as mother-of-pearl cloud, has been seen in Norway, Scotland and elsewhere in north-west Europe, almost wholly within the period December to February. This cloud is very of delicate structure, somewhat lenticular in form. Its distinguishing feature is that it shows iridescence, which remains visible after sunset; iridescence on ordinary clouds never persists after sunset. The colouring is exceptionally brilliant if the angular distance of the cloud from the sun is less than 40° . They are most spectacular just after sunset, or just before sunrise. They remain visible for half-an-hour or more after sunset, suddenly fading when the sun sinks too low to illuminate them. Before sunrise there is a correspondingly sudden appearance.

Mother-of-pearl cloud is composed of very minute water drops. Its height is from about 12 to 18 miles so that it is much higher in the atmosphere than the familiar types of ordinary high cloud. It is a rare phenomenon and its geographical distribution is very restricted. If seen, full details should be recorded including the size and shape of the clouds, their positions and angular distances from the sun, the distribution of the colours and the time at which the clouds darken, in the evening, or become illuminated, in the morning.

AURORAL DISPLAYS

General remarks. Associated with a severe magnetic storm there is always a great auroral display. When observing conditions are good this is one of the most beautiful and impressive of natural phenomena. As no instruments are necessary, and since reports of auroral displays are of particularly great scientific value, a fairly full description of aurora is given here, along with suggestions about methods of reporting observations.

Regions of occurrence. Aurora is primarily a polar phenomenon. It occurs most frequently in the two so-called auroral zones: these are rings of about 20° (1,400 miles) radius, centred on the geomagnetic axis poles (which are different from the magnetic poles usually marked on maps). The northern auroral zone is centred at about 79°N , 70°W , in north-west Greenland; it runs from Cape Farewell across Iceland, over the Norwegian Sea, passing 250 miles north of North Cape, and over the Arctic Ocean south of Franz Josef Land to meet the Alaskan coast near the mouth of the Mackenzie River. Its highest latitude is 81°N , reached in the Arctic Ocean at about 110°E . Crossing Alaska it descends to lower latitudes, traverses Hudson Bay at about 60°N , and passes over Davis Strait to Cape Farewell again. The southern auroral zone is centred at about 79°S , 110°E and runs across Antarctica from the coast of Little America at about 150°W , through the Falkland Islands Dependencies, to the coast of Enderby Land at about 70°E , and over the Antarctic Sea, reaching its lowest latitude, 59°S , at 110°E .

Even during quiet atmospheric conditions, there are strong electric currents flowing in the *E* layer around these two zones. It appears very likely that the quiet auroral arcs which seem to occur every night in the auroral zones are a visible manifestation of these currents. The process by which the gases of the upper atmosphere emit light under the influence of electric currents is similar to the process of light emission from a neon advertising tube.

During disturbed ionospheric conditions, such as follow the arrival at the earth of material ejected from the sun during a solar flare, the aurora moves from its position in the auroral zones and manifests great activity. Such an auroral display is observable from a wide range of latitudes during the course of the night. In particular, during a great ionospheric and magnetic storm, aurora is seen from sub-tropical and tropical latitudes, sometimes causing panic among the inhabitants of the countries where such displays are very rare. The duration of a display at low latitudes is very variable, from a few minutes to some hours, depending on the characteristics of the ionospheric disturbance concerned.

Height. It has been found that the commonest auroral forms, quiet arcs, which have a fairly distinct lower border, are nearly always situated in the *E* layer. The average height of the lower edge is about 65 miles. An auroral arc is often several hundred miles in length and the height above the earth of the lower edge is the same all along it; the effect of the curvature of the earth can therefore be clearly seen, producing the characteristic arc shape.

Another very characteristic feature of auroral forms is the appearance of a folded curtain, produced by bundles of upward-stretching rays. The line of an auroral ray is found to be along the direction of the magnetic force at the place concerned. In the latitudes where aurora is most common, the lines of magnetic force stand at about 20° from the vertical, inclined away from the geomagnetic pole. Rays may stretch up to heights of over 600 miles, particularly just after

sunset or just before dawn, when the upper parts are still sunlit, being outside the earth's shadow.

Aurora is entirely a phenomenon of the high atmosphere, where the air density is low. There are no authenticated measurements of heights less than 40 miles.

Variation during a night. During a great magnetic storm the time of maximum disturbance can occur at any time. Although maximum auroral activity is closely connected with maximum magnetic disturbance there is a tendency for auroral activity to reach a peak at any place within an hour or two of local midnight.

Seasonal variation. During a year there are two maxima of auroral activity around the equinoxes, which are fairly well marked. Of the twelve greatest auroral displays occurring during 1874 to 1954, three occurred in March and four in September.

Sunspot cycle variations. The great auroral displays are associated with great solar activity and therefore tend to occur around the times of maximum sunspot number. The observations made during and after the International Geophysical Year showed that in sub-auroral latitudes maximum auroral frequency coincided with the period of maximum activity of the sun (1957) and that a secondary maximum, almost as great as the primary, followed in 1959. At times of minimum sunspot number, auroral displays show the same tendency as magnetic storms to recur at 27-day intervals, these being the periods of time required for successive appearances opposite the earth of the same point on the sun's surface.

Observation of aurora. It is desirable to record all occurrences of aurora, and to give as good a description as possible, since there is much yet to be learnt about this phenomenon. Reports from ships are used in conjunction with reports from observers on land and in aircraft to compile full descriptions of all displays. These are required in connection with the study of many problems connected with long distance radio communication and other practical matters.

While auroral reports are required from all latitudes, marine observers who are familiar with auroral features can make a unique contribution to auroral studies by keeping a watch for aurora in tropical regions. Several of the great tropical displays of the past have been very poorly recorded because nearly all observers in the tropics are unaccustomed to seeing aurora and either do not recognize it at all or do not report its appearance properly. In addition, reports from all southern latitudes are very valuable, because nearly the whole of the inhabited southern hemisphere is at low latitudes where aurora is not often seen and there is therefore little auroral information available, except for that obtained by Antarctic expeditions.

The information required is as follows:

TIME. The time of each observation should be given in GMT. The times of outstanding events should be recorded to the nearest minute. Examples of such events are: the change from quiet to active forms, the onset of flaming activity, the increase in elevation of a previously stationary form, etc.

ACTIVITY. When an auroral form exhibits no movement or brightness variations it is said to be quiet. When there are small irregular movements or brightness variations it is said to be active. Two characteristic types of activity are given special names. When the light from a particular auroral form waxes and wanes fairly regularly (with a period of between 10 and 100 seconds) it is said to be pulsating. The most impressive type of activity is that known as flaming, in which waves of light appear to sweep across the forms from the horizon to the zenith.

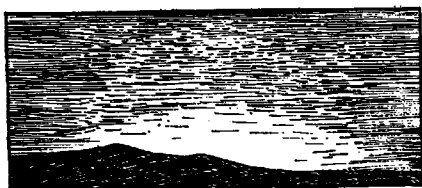
BRIGHTNESS. Four grades of brightness are recognized and are specified as follows: weak, when the light is similar in brightness to that of the Milky Way; moderate, like cirrus cloud in full moonlight; bright, like cumulus cloud in full moonlight; and brilliant, when the auroral forms appear brighter than any moonlit cloud. When the brightness is judged to be intermediate between two of these grades it can be expressed in such a way as "weak to moderate".

FORMS. The common forms and the symbols used to denote them are given in the drawings of Fig. 29. Aurora often appears as a GLOW (Fig. 29a) on the poleward horizon, almost always in the direction of the magnetic meridian; such a glow is the upper part of some other auroral form whose lower edge is below the horizon. A common form, particularly in high latitudes, is an ARC crossing the magnetic meridian; this may be HOMOGENEOUS, i.e. uniform in brightness (Fig. 29b), or RAYED, i.e., with vertical ray-structure (Fig. 29c). The reason for the arc shape is given above, under Height. Multiple arcs, running parallel to one another across the sky, are not uncommon. The sky between an arc and the horizon may appear to be darker than the surrounding sky at the same altitude; this is only a contrast effect, and stars may be seen undimmed in the so-called "dark segment". When the form has not the regular shape of an arc but has folds along its length it is called a BAND: this also may be HOMOGENEOUS (Fig. 29d) or RAYED (Fig. 29e). Rayed bands in which the rays are long look like curtains or draperies. An active rayed band overhead is perhaps the most impressive of all auroral forms, particularly if there are colour changes in the waving folds. Single RAYS (Fig. 29f) or bundles of rays are often seen after the break-up of a rayed arc or band. When such rays rise from behind a surface feature, a searchlight effect is produced. All rays in any display are very nearly parallel to one another, but perspective causes convergence and produces fan-like formations. Rays overhead always appear to converge to a point called the magnetic zenith, which is displaced from the overhead zenith towards the equator by an amount depending on the distance from the geomagnetic axis pole. For the British Isles, for example, the magnetic zenith is about 20° south of the overhead zenith. When rays surround this point, the rays are said to be CORONAL (Fig. 29g). Particularly towards the end of a display the aurora appears in PATCHES (Fig. 29h), which are like diffuse clouds, without any arc-type or ray-type structure. In lower latitudes an auroral display often consists largely of deep red patches.

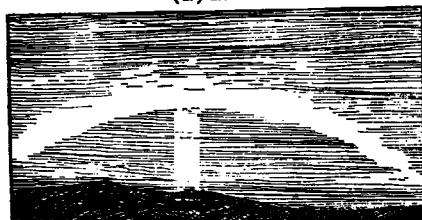
ELEVATION. This is measured as altitude in degrees from the horizon. The most important measurement is that of the elevation of the lower edge of an arc at its highest point. This can be indicated by the letter *h*: thus $h = 25^\circ$ means that the highest point of the lower edge of an arc is at an altitude of 25°.

DIRECTION. It is usually sufficient to give this in terms of true compass points, but accurate directions of features such as isolated bright rays are of value; these should be given in degrees of true azimuth. A sketch with angles marked on it is often easier to make and to read than a description in words.

COLOUR. Very often the intensity of auroral light is too low to stimulate the colour-sensitive part of the eye and all the forms appear pale and grey, like clouds illuminated by weak moonlight. But when the intensity increases, a variety of colours is seen. The commonest is yellow-green, one of the characteristic colours emitted by oxygen gas under the conditions prevailing in the ionosphere. Sometimes a red coloration is predominant. This usually comes from oxygen also, but in aurora at very low levels red nitrogen light has been found. Nitrogen, however, gives mainly blue and violet shades; and these are strongest



(a)Glow



(b)Homogeneous arc



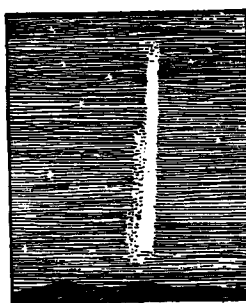
(c)Rayed arc



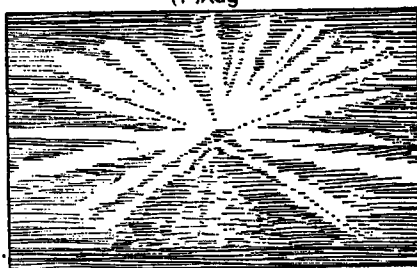
(d)Homogeneous band



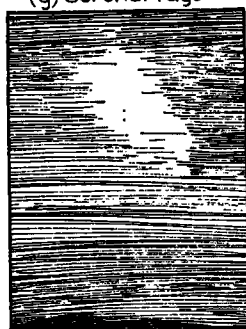
(e)Rayed band



(f)Ray



(g)Coronal rays



(h)Patch

FIG. 29. Auroral forms

in the long sunlit rays which occur just after sunset and just before dawn. Many mixtures of these and other colours are possible.

Photography of aurora. Because auroral light is of low intensity, time exposures are required for photography and this is not often possible on ship-board. Given steady conditions, an exposure of 15 to 30 seconds, with a lens aperture of $f/3.5$ and a fast film, should give a reasonable image of a bright auroral feature. With colour films of rating ASA 25, exposure times are 20 to 60 seconds at $f/3.5$, depending on the brightness of the feature. It is advisable to take several photographs at different exposures.

AIRGLOW

On a clear starlight night, in the absence of normal or abnormal twilight, moonlight, lunar twilight, thin high cloud over the sky, auroral displays or artificial illumination from towns, etc., the sky background is not dark, but has a certain degree of luminosity. While some of this luminosity is due to the combined light of stars too faint to be seen individually without the aid of a telescope, the greater part is due to a faint glow known as the airglow. Older names for this were "permanent aurora" and "earthlight".

The airglow is generally uniform over the sky except towards the horizon where it is usually somewhat brighter. The intensity is not always the same on different nights and there are exceptional nights when the sky background appears to be unusually light. There are no means of estimating the intensity of the glow by visual observation, so that the phenomenon is not one which can be usefully observed at sea.

METEORS AND METEORITES

During the night watches the seaman has many opportunities for obtaining useful observations of meteors. "Meteor" is a general term to include all those small bodies which, travelling through space, encounter the upper part of the earth's atmosphere and become visible by the incandescence produced by the friction of very rapid passage through it. It is estimated that many thousands of millions of these objects enter the atmosphere daily, but all except a minute fraction of these are much too faint to be naked eye objects. The vast majority of all meteors are entirely disintegrated and subsequently settle down slowly to the earth's surface in the form of extremely fine dust. A number, however, of greater size, may more or less wholly survive the disintegrating effect and fall to the earth's surface as solid objects of varying sizes. These are called meteorites. On rather rare occasions they have been observed to fall into the sea, the actual splash being seen. Such an event should be recorded in the logbook in full detail. No meteor should be described as a meteorite unless it is definitely known to have reached the land surface or have fallen into the sea.

The ordinary small meteors appearing as luminous streaks in the sky are popularly known as "shooting stars", but they have of course no connection with any star, being merely small fragments of matter varying in size from grains of sand to a pea. Larger objects are known as fireballs. These may be as bright as a first magnitude star or may equal the planets Jupiter or Venus, or, in the very finest examples, may greatly exceed the full moon in brilliance. Objects which fall as meteorites usually appear first as one of these very bright meteors, but the reverse does not hold good, as the majority of the brighter meteors are completely disintegrated in the air.

Appearance and speed of meteors. The appearance of meteors is as varied as their brightness. Some travel fast, others slowly. The apparent path is usually a straight line or arc, but it may assume other forms. Some leave streaks of sparks or luminous vapour, known as trails. In many cases the trail disappears immediately, but in others it remains visible for seconds or minutes, or in rare cases for periods up to two hours or more. When the trail remains visible for some time, changes may be observed in it, caused by the air currents of the high upper air, combined with the fall of the material due to gravity. Most large meteors and fireballs are strongly coloured and the colours may change during the flight. Sometimes the meteor appears to break up, the detached portions then proceeding separately, or it may appear to explode at the end of its course. The trails are usually reddish, white or golden, whatever the colour (or changing colours) of the meteor itself.

The duration of a meteor's flight is rarely more than three seconds, and is apt to be greatly overestimated. The actual speed of a meteor when it enters the earth's atmosphere is usually between 10 and 45 miles per second. The average height above the earth's surface is 75–80 miles at the time of appearance and 45–50 miles at the time of disappearance. The height of the beginning and end of a meteor's visible path in the atmosphere and its speed are determined by observations made by two observers some distance apart, up to 100 miles or more. At much greater distances the same meteor could not be seen by both observers, since an individual meteor is only visible over a small part of the earth's surface and would thus be below the horizon of one of the observers. In this joint observation each observer notes the points of appearance and disappearance of the meteor in the sky as accurately as possible, and the duration of its flight. The information derived from such observations is valuable, not only in extending our knowledge of meteors, but also in making inferences about the temperature of the very attenuated atmosphere at very great heights above the earth's surface.

Frequency of meteors. Meteor showers. The number of meteors seen in a given time is usually greater on nights of higher atmospheric transparency, since more of the fainter meteors are seen, and these are much more numerous than the brighter ones. On nights of equal clarity, about twice as many are visible in July to December as in January to June. Furthermore on any single night of the year the hourly rate of meteor appearance is greater after midnight than before it. These remarks refer to average conditions. On certain nights it may be seen that meteors are more numerous than usual and that their tracks, produced backward, would all converge to the same point or small area in the sky. Such a group of meteors, with the same radiant point, constitute a meteor shower. Many of these occur annually, though not always with the same intensity; some recur only after an interval of a number of years, and others are unpredicted and unexpected. Prolific showers, with perhaps many thousand meteors per hour, such as were given by the Leonids in November of 1799, 1833 and 1866, have been extremely rare of more recent years. The collection of meteors forming a shower are moving in the same general orbit in space and in a few cases the orbit of a shower has been found to be the same as that of a known comet, of whose material the meteors originally formed a part.

Observation of meteors. The complete observation of a meteor comprises:

- (1) The positions of the points of appearance and disappearance in the sky.
- (2) The duration of the flight.

- (3) The magnitude of the meteor relative to a named star or planet, or a general estimate, such as first magnitude.
- (4) Any notable colour, colour changes, persistence of trail, or other peculiarities.

It is not necessary to record the meteorological conditions at the time of a meteor observation, but if the flight is only partially seen, owing to cloud, this should be noted.

Owing to the suddenness of a meteor's appearance, it is often difficult to fix in mind the points of appearance and disappearance. This should be done as accurately as possible with respect to neighbouring stars, and from a star atlas. The right ascension and declination of each point can then be found. Alternatively, the position can sometimes be given as an angular distance from one named star in the direction towards another named star. Such observations of position, if reasonably accurate, say to the nearest half-degree, are of use in determining the radiant point of the meteor or for combining with another observation made at sea or on land, to find its height and speed. Positions by azimuth and estimated altitude are hardly accurate enough for these purposes. An observation of the brightness and appearance of a fine meteor is however of interest, even if its track in the sky has not been exactly determined.

Observations of a persistent meteor trail are of interest. The shape of the trail and its position relative to at least two named stars should be drawn at suitable intervals of time until it disappears. If carefully timed observations of the same trail are received from two or more observing ships, some information about the speed and direction of the wind at the time in the high atmosphere can be computed.

The appearance of meteors in unusual numbers on any night, especially if obviously directed from the same point in the heavens, should be put on record. The occurrence or non-occurrence of showers on a particular night is often of considerable astronomical interest, and it may happen that the conditions are such that a meteor shower is visible only in restricted longitudes.

ARTIFICIAL SATELLITES, RESEARCH ROCKETS AND ALLIED PHENOMENA

Artificial satellites. In December 1966 there were approximately 1,200 satellites in orbit about the earth of which about 100 were observable with the unaided eye by the sunlight reflected from them at times when the observer was in darkness or twilight. A satellite can normally be distinguished from a planet or meteor by its angular velocity across the sky, which is much greater than the former and much less than the latter. In addition, the length of time for which a meteor can be seen is seldom greater than 3 or 4 seconds, while a satellite may be visible for up to about 45 minutes and a planet up to about 12 hours. So long as they behave in a normal manner, i.e. steady course and speed, the passages of satellites are not of great importance and need not be recorded in the meteorological logbook. A special case, however, is the re-entry of a satellite into the earth's atmosphere and its burning up. The accurate observation of this event may yield information about the density of the atmosphere through which the satellite is travelling.

Re-entry occurs when a satellite, due for example to the cumulative effect of small drag forces throughout its lifetime, descends into the denser regions of the

high atmosphere. The frictional effects increase as a consequence, it descends still further and its path about the earth rapidly degenerates into a spiral. During the final stages of this process the satellite becomes incandescent because of its extremely high temperature and eventually it disintegrates and burns up.

In appearance, a re-entering satellite is similar to the passage of a meteor but it is brighter, moves more slowly across the sky and may be visible for several minutes. A re-entry can happen in any part of the world and, when seen, should be recorded by following the general rule outlined in Chapter 8. When recording a possible sighting of a re-entering satellite it is important to note as accurately as possible the direction of travel of the object across the sky, its brightness compared with known stars, the time, bearing and elevation angle when first and last seen, together with any extraneous circumstances such as intervening cloud which may have curtailed or otherwise limited the observations.

Research Rockets. These are launched from various ranges such as Thumba in $8^{\circ} 32'N$, $76^{\circ} 52'E$ and carry equipment for research into the environment of the earth, including its high atmosphere, or for astronomical observations. They are usually projected vertically or nearly so and, after attaining their maximum height which may be 100 miles or more, fall back to the earth's surface. The direct light from the burning propellant during the upward leg of the flight will be readily identified but some of the experiments carried by the rockets may themselves give rise to effects which are visible at night. For example, equipment may be carried which releases chemicals into the high atmosphere.

Some chemical vapours are ejected in the form of a long bright trail on the upleg or downleg of the rocket path. Night-time trails usually appear white but at twilight, about 30 minutes after sunset or before sunrise, the trails are generally yellow, red or greenish-blue. Although their size depends on the altitude at which they are released and, of course, on the position of the observer, it is not unusual for a trail to be as much as 40° long and from 1° to 5° wide. These vapour trails, which may remain visible for more than 20 minutes, are generally distorted by winds in the upper atmosphere.

Sometimes "grenades" are ejected from the rocket during the upward flight, generating acoustic waves whose reception at the ground enables the wind and temperature structure of the upper atmosphere to be calculated. At night a grenade burst would appear similar to an AA shell burst, being much brighter than a planet but of very short duration. After 2 or 3 seconds another burst would appear displaced in the direction of flight. The number of bursts may total about 20. No sounds are likely to be heard as the acoustic waves are generated at sub-audible frequencies and are very weak in intensity on reaching the ground. In some rocket firings the grenade ejections are extended above 60 miles altitude and the gas products of the explosion then react chemically with the atmosphere, producing a faintly luminous spherical cloud about the size of the full moon although very much fainter. Such clouds may last for 5–10 minutes before diffusing and disappearing and during this time the wind speed and direction can be found from their drift. On other occasions a faintly luminous trail may be produced for the same purpose by the release of a certain chemical from the rocket. The trail, like the grenade clouds, is a soft white in colour. Such experiments are often held under twilight conditions with sunlight falling on the releases against a still dark sky. The sunlight is re-radiated in certain parts of the spectrum from the cloud or trail providing a spectacular blue-green hue, or the well-known yellow coloration of sodium light, if sodium vapour has been released.

CHAPTER 11

Phenomena of the Lower Atmosphere

The presence of water droplets, ice crystals and dust particles in the atmosphere and local abnormalities in the distribution of temperature and humidity give rise to a wide variety of interesting and beautiful phenomena which are mainly due to either the reflection, refraction or scattering of the rays of the sun or moon. Many of these "optical phenomena" are described below. Also included are descriptions of a few phenomena which are due to other causes and which are equally worthy of careful observation when they occur.

ABNORMAL REFRACTION AND MIRAGE

A mirage is produced by refraction of light in the layers of air close to the earth's surface. Two main classes of mirage occur, (i) inferior and (ii) superior, in which the virtual image is below and above the object, respectively. The inferior image is seen over a flat, strongly heated surface (e.g. desert) and gives the illusion of an expanse of water; it is caused by the strong upward reflection of light from the clear sky towards the observer. The superior mirage is seen above a flat surface of much lower temperature than the air above it; light from an object is, in this case, bent downwards towards the observer, as in "looming". In such physical conditions multiple reflections may give rise to various images, some displaced laterally with respect to the object.

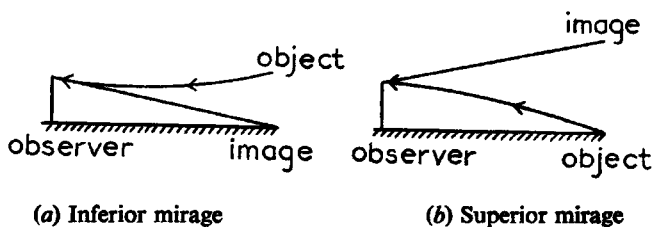


FIG. 30. Mirages

Good descriptions and sketches of the various forms of mirage and the effects of abnormal refraction are always of interest, especially of the more striking forms, such as a well-developed superior mirage. Unusual phenomena should be carefully reported, such as the apparent discontinuity or distortion of the horizon line that has been occasionally seen, also lateral mirages and the complicated mixed mirages of the Strait of Messina, known by the name, of Italian origin, of "fata Morgana". When lights are seen at abnormal distances, the normal distance of visibility should be given. In all observations of abnormal refraction and mirage, the temperature of air and sea, the type and amount of cloud present, and the direction and force of the wind should be noted.

BROCKEN SPECTRE

In a foggy atmosphere an observer, standing with his back to the sun, when this is at low altitude, will sometimes see the shadow of himself, or of his head,

thrown upon the fog, together with coloured rings of light surrounding the shadow. The phenomenon was first noted on the Brocken mountain in Germany but it is not confined to mountain districts and it is most common in Arctic regions, where it is seen on every occasion of simultaneous sunshine and fog.

The coloured rings are now usually known as a "glory". A typical series of colours seen in a well-developed one is as follows. There is a general whitish-yellow colour round the shadow, surrounded with rings of colour in order outwards: dull red, bluish-green, reddish-violet, blue, green, red, green, red. A white rainbow at a considerable distance outside the glory is sometimes also seen.

The shadow of the observer on thick fog may be seen at night if there is a bright artificial light behind him.

COLOURED SUNS AND MOONS

The various red or orange colours ordinarily exhibited by the sun or moon when near the horizon are due to the fact that these bodies are then viewed through a great thickness of the dust-laden lower atmosphere, which absorbs most of the sunlight of shorter wavelengths, leaving the longer ones, mainly yellow and red, to come through.

Occasionally in twilight the moon appears to be of a greenish colour, usually a pale greenish-blue or a pale apple-green colour. This is an effect of colour contrast when the twilight hues of the surrounding sky are brighter than usual, either purplish or reddish, or when the moon is near or covered by thin, brightly-tinted cloud.

Coloured suns or moons, not an effect of colour contrast, are sometimes seen. This phenomenon may be produced by dust or smoke haze in the lower atmosphere, e.g., a scirocco laden with dust from the Sahara may give a blue sun or moon in the Mediterranean, and a similar colour may be given in the region of extensive bush fires. The phenomenon may also be produced by volcanic dust at high atmospheric levels. Blue and green moons were observed on many occasions after the great eruption of Krakatoa in 1883 and the sun assumed many different and often quite brilliant colours. Shades of red and copper, green, golden-green, blue, silvery and leaden were seen on various days in different localities.

Coloured suns and moons were seen over much of western Europe between 26th and 30th September 1950. These were produced by the smoke from an extensive forest fire in Alberta, Canada which began on 23rd September. The sun's colour was observed in different places as steel-grey, deep blue and purple.

Any observations of this kind are of interest.

CORONÆ

A corona consists of one or more coloured rings round the sun or moon as centre, when this is covered with middle or lower cloud of sufficient thinness to allow the greater part of the light to come through. It is distinguished from a halo by its smaller size and different colouring, as explained below. A fully-developed corona shows a bluish-white or yellowish glow, usually 2° or 3° in diameter, round the sun (or moon). Outside this is a brownish-red ring. The inner glow and the brownish ring together constitute what is called the aureole. Outside this are coloured rings, in the opposite colour sequence to that of a halo,

viz., violet or blue nearest the sun and red furthest out. Sometimes the whole of this colour sequence is repeated outwards a second or, on rare occasions, even a third or fourth time. A corona showing the outer coloured rings is comparatively infrequent, but the aureole alone is the commonest of optical meteorological phenomena and is formed, at any rate partially, whenever broken cloud edges of cumulus, stratus or stratocumulus pass over the sun or moon.

While the radii of the various halos are constant, that of a corona varies on different occasions, being dependent on the size of the water-drops in the cloud. The outside radius of a fully-developed corona is usually much smaller than that of the 22° halo, and is generally between 5° and 8°. After great volcanic eruptions, when fine dust is suspended at great heights in the atmosphere, an aureole comparable in size with the 22° halo has been seen; it is known as Bishop's ring.

Faint coronæ are visible round the bright planets, Venus and Jupiter, and also Mars when this is sufficiently bright, providing the cloud is very thin. They may sometimes be seen round the brightest stars, especially if binoculars are used.

A yellowish blur 2° or 3° in diameter is often seen round the sun or moon and is sometimes formed by higher cloud than that which normally gives coronæ. Although it has a fairly sharply defined circular edge it must not be regarded as an aureole unless bounded by the characteristic brownish-red ring.

In certain circumstances the sun or moon may show a halo and a corona simultaneously.

The name "corona" is also given to the outer part of the sun's atmosphere (see page 76); this is directly visible only during a solar eclipse and is distinguished by the term "solar corona".

CORPOSANTS

The electrical phenomenon known as *Corposants* or *St. Elmo's Fire* is not infrequently observed at sea during squalls and thunderstorms. It is a luminous apparition seen at the extremities of masts and sometimes on the stays, aerial, jackstaff or other parts of the ship. It may appear as a brush discharge of radiating streamers several inches long, or as luminous globes, a number of which are sometimes seen along the aerial. At other times a structureless glow envelops an elongated object, such as a mast or an aerial. *St. Elmo's Fire* is usually bluish or greenish in colour, but a violet glow has been reported and sometimes the colour is pure white.

CREPUSCULAR RAYS

The word "crepuscular" means "associated with twilight". Occasionally, soon after sunset, the clear sky appears to be divided into lighter and darker rays by lines diverging from the position of the sun below the horizon. The lighter rays are those illuminated by sunshine; they are usually coloured pink, but may, on different occasions, show some shade of red or orange. The darker rays are shadows, from which the sunlight is cut off by clouds near or just below the horizon or by the irregularities of hills and mountains on the horizon. They appear greenish by contrast with the pink rays.

As the light rays come from the sun, and so are practically parallel, their apparent divergence is an effect of perspective. In favourable circumstances the light rays and shadows extend right across the sky and appear to converge, by

perspective, to a point a little above the eastern horizon. These "anti-crepuscular rays" are generally ill-defined.

It is not necessary to record this phenomenon in the logbook unless it shows some feature of special interest, such as unusually distinct colouring or a well-defined convergence to the eastern horizon.

On rare occasions one or more bands have been seen extending up into the sky, from the western horizon, at a later stage of twilight. They appear of a deep blue colour, darker than the general blue of the sky, and are probably shadows of mountains well below the horizon. It is of interest to record these observations.

There are two other allied phenomena which are frequently seen and are of no special interest, unless some unusual feature is observed. The first consists of pale blue or whitish rays diverging from the sun in the day-time when it is behind cumulus or cumulonimbus cloud. The rays are sharply defined and separated by deep blue bands, which are the shadows of parts of the irregular cloud-edge. The second is associated with stratus or other cloud obscuring the sun. If there are small gaps in the cloud, sunbeams pierce these, directed more or less downward, and are rendered luminous by mist or dust in the air. This is popularly known as "the sun drawing water".

DUSTFALL AT SEA

Dust from the land may be blown over the adjacent sea by high winds, but not normally in appreciable quantity. In special regions, e.g., the Red Sea, sand or dust storms are not infrequent and are sometimes severe.

Desert dust or sand may be carried up to high levels of the atmosphere and finally be dispersed over so great an area as not to form any perceptible deposit on falling. The desert dust from Australia carried north-westward by the south-east monsoon reduces visibility over the East Indies region but is not observed as dustfall.

On the other hand, falls of fine reddish or brownish dust from the Sahara, carried by the trade wind, are experienced over a large area of the eastern North Atlantic adjacent to the coast of Africa, centred roughly on Cape Verde Islands. At times this deposit may lie quite thickly on board ship. Visibility in this area is often poor; not infrequently the sun appears blood-red and at night all but the brightest stars at high altitudes are obscured.

Considerable or heavy dustfall may be experienced after a great volcanic eruption. Dust from the eruption of Krakatoa in 1883 was collected on ship-board in the Indian Ocean at a distance of 1,000 miles. After the eruption of Hekla in March 1947, dust was similarly collected at a distance of 450 miles. In August 1966 the dust from the eruption of Mount Awu in the Sangihe Islands covered the decks of a ship 225 miles away in the Celebes Sea.

THE GREEN FLASH

At sunset, the small segment of the upper part of the sun's disc, which is the last to disappear, may turn emerald-green or bluish-green at the instant of its setting. The phenomenon thus usually lasts only a fraction of a second, which is the reason for calling it the "green flash", but longer durations of the colour are occasionally seen.

The green flash is not always seen and when it is seen it is not always equally brilliant. It can range from a green of extreme brilliance and purity, conspicuous

without optical aid, down to a trace of grey-green coloration observable only with binoculars.

The green flash is produced by the unequal refraction of light of different colours, when the sun is at very low altitudes. This gives fringes of colours of the shorter wave-lengths, green, blue and violet, along the sun's upper limb and a fringe of the colour of the longest wave-length, red, along the sun's lower limb. The fringes of the upper limb cannot usually be seen while the main body of the sun is still above the horizon, as the general sunlight is too strong, but when most of this is cut off by the horizon they spring suddenly into view. Normally, only the green fringe is seen, the light of still shorter wave-lengths usually being absorbed by its horizontal passage through the lower atmosphere. The flash is, however, occasionally seen as a blue one, or as green quickly changing to blue. On very rare occasions the violet colour has been seen.

The green colour occasionally appears in other ways. Sometimes when refraction is marked, and the sun's disc is perhaps distorted, binoculars will show that the upper limb appears to be "boiling", giving off shreds or tongues of green "vapour". Occasionally the sun's upper limb has been seen with a narrow green rim when half or more of the disc remained above the horizon.

A sea horizon is not essential for observing the green flash; it may be equally well seen when the sun sets behind a distant land surface. It has also often been seen when the upper limb sinks below a bank or bar of hard-edged cloud at low altitude, and if there are several parallel bars of cloud in clear sky the phenomenon may be seen more than once on the same evening. When the lower line of the sun appears from behind cloud near the horizon the converse phenomenon, the "red flash", has sometimes been seen.

The green flash occurs also with the moon, but has seldom been observed, presumably because it is fainter and rarely looked for. On the other hand, it has been frequently seen at the setting of the bright planets Venus and Jupiter, and an observation of a blue flash from Venus is on record. Many interesting varieties of phenomena may occur before these planets set, the observation usually requiring binoculars. Colour changes may be seen, usually between white, red and green, or two images may appear of the same or different colours. The planet may exhibit slow "swimming" movements, obviously due to abnormal refraction.

The most favourable condition for seeing the green flash, at any rate brilliantly, is probably some degree of abnormal refraction, whereby the vertical extent of the colour separation described above is greater than that produced by normal refraction. In addition, the green flash is most likely to be seen when the air is relatively dust-free, and without mist or haze, so that the sun remains brighter and less red than usual at low altitudes. The green flash has been well observed at sunrise, but less frequently, perhaps because it is less often looked for. Also, owing to its short duration the phenomenon is liable to be missed unless the exact spot at which the sun will appear is known.

The green flash has sometimes been called, rather inappropriately, the "green ray". It will be obvious from the remarks made above that it exhibits a considerable variety of appearances at different times. Further observations, giving as much detail as possible, will be very useful in increasing our knowledge of this interesting phenomenon and the conditions most favourable for its appearance.

Other phenomena involving green coloration of the sky in the vicinity of

the sun at the moment of sunset are occasionally seen, and observations of these are also of interest, as they exhibit much variety. Some examples are (i) a momentary ray of green light shooting up into the sky, sometimes to a considerable altitude at or just before the final instant of sunset, (ii) an appearance resembling a rapidly rotating green searchlight beam, (iii) a transitory appearance as of green mist in the sky above the setting sun.

HALO PHENOMENA

General remarks. A halo is usually understood to mean a luminous ring, with the sun or moon at its centre. Only two such rings are observable as complete circles, the haloes of 22° and 46° radius. Many analogous phenomena are, however, seen at times in various parts of the sky, including complete rings not centred on the sun or moon, arcs of haloes not formed as complete rings, and diffuse images of the sun or moon, known as mock suns or moons. These, with the true haloes, are grouped under the name of "halo phenomena". A number of these may, in suitable conditions, be seen simultaneously. The composite phenomenon is then called a "halo complex" and may, on exceptional occasions, be of great intricacy and beauty. Fig. 31 is from a drawing of the halo complex at Danzig observed by the astronomer Hevelius on 20th February 1661. It shows the more common phenomena and some of the rarer ones.

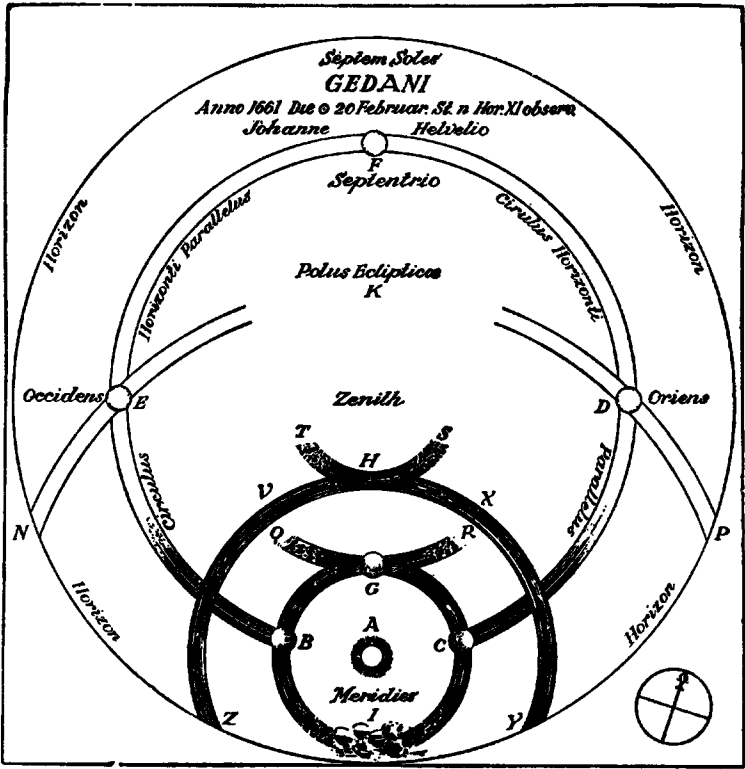


FIG. 31. Halo complex observed at Danzig on 20th February 1661

To avoid repetition, the sun is assumed to be the source of light in the following remarks. Lunar halo phenomena are, in general, as readily seen as solar ones, if the moon is near or at the full. The actual luminosity of a lunar halo is much less, but so is the brightness of the sky against which it is seen.

Some halo phenomena are always white, from their mode of formation; others, including the 22° and 46° haloes, are coloured. With one exception, however, the circumzenithal arc, the colours are very seldom as brilliant and pure as those of a rainbow. The actual degree of brilliance, however, varies considerably. Sometimes the colour is very impure, perhaps showing only reddish and yellowish tinges; at other times it is much clearer and may show more of the spectrum, and in exceptional cases the whole of it. The red end of the spectrum is always nearest the sun and therefore on the inside of the 22° and 46° haloes. In the case of arcs that show colour, the red is also nearest to the sun, whether the arc is convex or concave to the sun. The red side of the mock sun is also nearest the sun. Less colour is usually seen in lunar halo phenomena, but it is sometimes quite distinct.

The observation of haloes. High latitudes, especially the polar regions, are the most favourable for frequent and brilliant displays of halo phenomena, which can be formed not only by cirrostratus cloud, but also by ice fog. Many fine displays occur, however, in temperate latitudes, where the late spring is an especially good season.

Cirrostratus is the most favourable cloud for the production of halo phenomena; the thinner and more uniform its texture the better. On the most suitable occasions, the blue sky is only dimmed with a uniform milky appearance. When the cloud is thicker in some places than others, and especially when wisps and streaks of cirrus are mixed with it, not only are the phenomena less distinct but straight or curved lines of cloud may be mistaken for additional halo phenomena.

When thin cirrostratus is present and one or more of the commoner halo phenomena are well seen, the prospects of seeing some of the rare halo phenomena are good and a careful general look over the whole sky may result in something else being seen. Attention should chiefly be concentrated on the following regions (i) that surrounding the sun up to a radius of at least 46° , (ii) a belt of the sky, at the same altitude as the sun, all round the horizon, (iii) the overhead sky, with the zenith as centre.

On account of the methods of formation of halo phenomena, the reflection and refraction of light by ice crystals, the position of each halo, etc., is always precisely the same relative to the sun or, in some cases, to the zenith. A halo phenomenon is thus identified by its position in the sky; its appearance is of secondary importance, though, in some cases, this helps in the identification. The most essential part of a halo observation is therefore the determination of its position by angular measurement with reference to the sun (or moon) or, in appropriate cases, the horizon or the zenith. Most of the rarer phenomena can only thus be identified with certainty.

The altitude of the sun, to the nearest degree, should also always be given, since this affects the precise position of certain halo phenomena, and in some cases determines what phenomena it is possible to see at the time. The radius of the relatively well-defined inner edge of any halo, or part of a halo, centred on the sun should be measured in degrees from the sun's centre. In the case of arcs situated vertically above the sun such as the circumzenithal arc, the distance

of the lowest part of the arc from the sun is all that is required. It is useful, however, to estimate the extent of any such arc as a fraction of the small circle of which it forms part.

The mock sun ring is identified by its parallelism to the horizon, at the sun's altitude; no measurements are required. A phenomenon situated on it, such as the anthelion or other bright spot, or the point of intersection of an arc with it, is measured in the form of azimuth distance from the sun.

The above statement should be sufficient to indicate to the observer the lines on which he should proceed. The most difficult cases are certain abnormal phenomena such as are shown in Figs. 32 and 33. The diameter of any halo not centred on the sun or moon could be measured by sextant; the altitude and azimuth of the estimated centre of the halo would then give its position. The position of any detached arc could be measured by taking the altitude and azimuth of each of the two ends, and of the point on the halo equidistant from these.

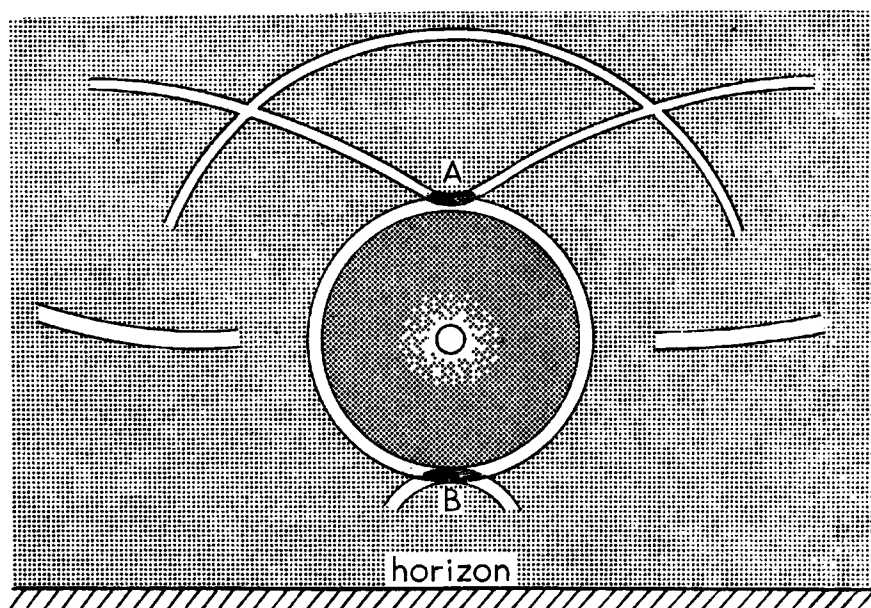


FIG. 32. Solar halo complex

Witnessed from M.V. *Nova Scotia*, Captain N. R. Land, St. John (N.B.) to Liverpool. Observer, Mr. A. C. Herdan, 3rd Officer.

"1st October 1965. Position $43^{\circ}16'N$, $66^{\circ}15'W$. The halo complex was clearly seen from 1200–1600 GMT. The radius of the inner halo was $21^{\circ}26'$ and that of the partial outer concentric halo was $46^{\circ}30'$. Two wing-shaped arcs, each subtending an angle of about 54° , crossed the outer concentric halo, meeting at the centre of their span directly above the sun and in contact with the upper edge of the inner concentric halo. At the point of contact (A) a brilliant spectrum could be seen subtending an angle of at least 14° . About 1530, the most vivid period, two more haloes were seen. One was a white arc which would have stretched right across the halo complex, passing through the position of the sun, if it hadn't been rendered invisible by the glare. The other was a small, but vivid, inverted half halo of about 6° radius; it was in contact with the inner halo, its upper edge crossing the latter's lower limb (B). At this point also vivid coloration was seen. Altitude of sun; $21^{\circ}50'$; bearing 094° . Cloud, small amounts of Cirrus and Altostratus."

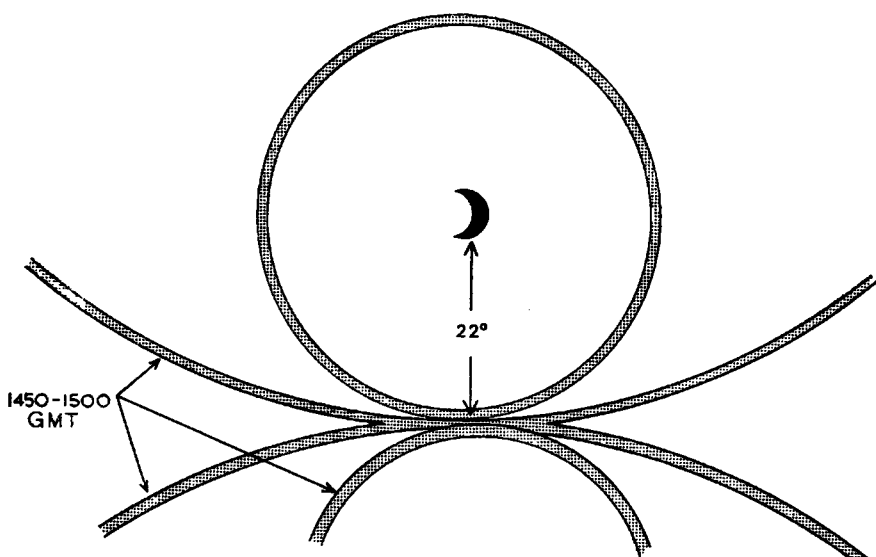


FIG. 33. Lunar halo complex

Witnessed from *M.V. Koraki*. Captain H. C. Townend. Tauranga to Melbourne. Observer, Mr. M. J. C. Orr, 2nd Officer.

"28th May 1967. Position $34^{\circ}34'S$, $171^{\circ}42'E$. The 22° halo was first seen at 1415 GMT when the moon was at an approximate altitude of 60° and bore 090° . At 1450 the tangential arcs appeared, weak at first but gradually gaining in intensity in the next 10 minutes. The complex remained visible for about 20 minutes, after which time only the 22° halo was seen. A thin layer of Cirrostratus to Altostratus was present and also some Cumulus."

Having established the position, any point of special interest should be noted, such as an exceptional degree of brightness or colour, variations in brightness in different parts of a halo, or a halo appearing elliptical instead of circular, etc. In the case of the rarer phenomena, the fullest possible information should be recorded, preferably accompanied by a sketch, on which all angular measurements are shown. In sketching halo phenomena the size of the sun (or moon) is usually exaggerated, sometimes very greatly. Even in landscape paintings by well-known artists, the same thing usually occurs. The discs of the sun and moon are about half-a-degree in diameter and therefore only about one-ninetieth of the diameter of the common halo of 22° radius.

Description of halo phenomena. The following three phenomena are those most frequently seen, either singly or in combination.

(i) **HALO OF 22° .** This, in complete or partial form, is very common in temperate latitudes and, if looked for, can probably be seen on the average about one day out of three (BGCI, Fig. 31). The outer edge shades off gradually; in favourable circumstances it is several degrees wide. The sky inside the halo, except for a patch surrounding the sun, is darker than that outside it. The edge of the halo nearest the sun is a dull red, followed outwards by a yellowish tinge. Outside this the halo is usually whitish, but if the other colours are purer and stronger it may be greenish. Blue can seldom be seen; on extremely rare occasions it has been seen with a tinge of violet outside.

(ii) **PARHELIA OF 22°.** Parhelia (mock suns) and paraselenae (mock moons) are one of the most frequent and most striking of halo phenomena. They are luminous, sometimes very brilliant, blurred images of the sun, seen at the same altitude of the sun, or either side of it (B and C, Fig. 31). They cannot be formed when the sun's altitude exceeds 60° 45'. When this altitude is 10° or less the mock suns are situated approximately on the 22° halo. With increasing altitude the mock suns are formed further outside the halo; when the sun's altitude is 55° they lie about 14° outside the halo. They always lie on the horizontal mock sun ring (*see below*), which may or may not be visible at the time. Mock suns are often quite brightly coloured and, when at all bright, they are drawn out to long, pointed, horizontal white tails on the side away from the sun. A single mock sun, often very brilliant, may not infrequently be seen in a small patch of cirrostratus cloud on a clear evening, the cloud not being extensive enough to give any other halo phenomena. A mock sun may be formed on aeroplane trail cloud, when it has widened out sufficiently; other halo phenomena have been seen similarly formed.

(iii) **UPPER CONTACT ARC TO 22° HALO.** This is a curved arc situated vertically above the sun, tangent to the highest point of the halo of 22°; it cannot be formed if the sun's altitude exceeds 70°. Its shape varies greatly according to the sun's altitude, being sometimes convex to the sun, at other times concave to the sun. A similar arc, also changing with the sun's altitude, may be seen tangent to the lowest point of the 22° halo, but is less common. When the sun's altitude is 29° or more the upper and lower contact arcs may join, outside the 22° halo. With higher solar altitudes this may produce a halo of nearly elliptical form, known as the Circumscribed Halo. QGR, Fig. 31, shows the upper contact arc and Fig. 32, part of the lower contact arc. The upper contact arc, or just the points of contact, may display colour effects.

The following phenomena are occasionally seen:—

(iv) **HALO OF 46°.** This is much less common than the 22° halo and when visible is often incomplete, since a very large area of cloud of suitable type is necessary to show the whole of it (ZVXY, Fig. 31). It is usually less bright than the 22° halo. It is often whitish in colour but when colouring is seen it is generally purer than that of the 22° halo.

(v) **CIRCUMZENITHAL ARC.** In favourable circumstances, this shows the purest and most vivid colouring of all halo phenomena. It has been mistaken for a rainbow, but should not be, as it is in the same azimuth as the sun, but at a higher altitude and convex to the sun (THS, Fig. 31), while a rainbow is seen on the opposite side of the observer to the sun (*see page 105*). It is usually a comparatively short arc. The upper part of the 46° halo may or may not be visible at the same time. If the 46° halo is present the circumzenithal arc may touch its highest point or it may pass above it at varying distances up to 12°. These variations depend on the sun's altitude.

(vi) **PARHELIC CIRCLE (MOCK SUN, OR MOON, RING).** This is a white circle, parallel to the horizon, so that if complete it is seen in all azimuths. It is of the same altitude as the sun and thus passes horizontally through the sun and through the mock suns, if these are visible (BEFDC, Fig. 31). The part within the 22° halo is often missing. The mock sun ring is usually rather diffuse and faint, but sometimes it is bright and well-defined, with a width of a degree or so.

(vii) **SUN PILLAR.** During very cold weather a vertical pillar of white light is not infrequently seen above the sun, when this is at low altitude; it may also extend vertically below the sun. When the sun is on or below the horizon, the

upper part of the pillar only is seen, and may be more conspicuous than it was before sunset. After sunset the pillar is usually of a red or orange colour.

The occurrence of other halo phenomena ranges from comparatively rare to extremely rare. Some of them have been recorded at sea from time to time. Some have only once been observed. Other haloes have been centred on the sun, with various radii between 8° and 32° . Should one of these very rare haloes be observed, its radius should be most carefully measured. Other possible phenomena in the region of the sun comprise secondary haloes of 22° , centred on the common mock suns of the ordinary halo of 22° , also arcs other than those already described situated vertically above or below the sun.

In the mock sun ring region the phenomena include mock suns, other than the common ones, at various points on the ring, and arcs crossing the mock sun ring obliquely. The more usual positions of these mock suns are (a) 180° in azimuth from the sun (anthelion) (F, Fig. 31) and (b) one on either side, 120° in azimuth from the sun. These mock suns or arcs may sometimes be seen even though the mock sun ring is not visible.

In the region of the zenith, arcs of various lengths and curvatures are seen at times. They may be symmetrically developed on either side of the zenith and some may extend down opposite the sun to reach the mock sun ring.

There are few other phenomena not included in the above grouping, e.g., various forms of cross, centred on the sun or moon, are occasionally seen (Fig. 34). The vertical arm is usually formed by part of a sun pillar and the

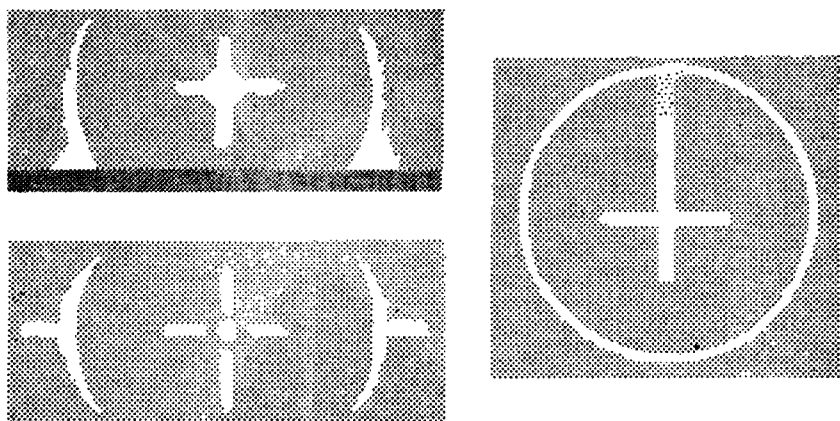


FIG. 34. Forms of halo cross

horizontal arm by a short portion of the mock sun circle. Abnormal phenomena of unknown origin are also sometimes reported. One such observation is shown in Fig. 32 in which is seen the ordinary 22° halo, with an arc above, probably part of the 46° halo.

IRIDESCENT CLOUD

Patches of delicate, but often vivid, colouring are occasionally seen at any time of the day on altocumulus and other middle and high clouds, often covering quite a large extent of cloud. It may form a very beautiful spectacle, especially

if the sun is hidden from the observer's view by lower cloud. Red and green are the most common colours, but others, such as lilac, may be seen. Sometimes the colours lie in bands parallel to the edge of the cloud, but often they form an irregular mosaic, delicately shading into one another. The colouring resembles that of coronæ, but the bands of colour do not form concentric circles with the sun as centre. Sometimes a number of coloured patches may be seen along a straight line passing through the sun.

Iridescence is usually seen on cloud near the sun or within about 30° of the sun, but may occur at greater distances. It seems to be most frequently observed on cloud that is either in process of formation or evaporation. The colouring is not normally seen after sunset or before sunrise, but brilliant iridescence, continuing after sunset, or appearing before sunrise, may be seen on a very rare high form of cloud, *see* Mother-of-Pearl Cloud (page 84).

If the observer is in doubt as to whether he is seeing ordinary sunset cloud colouring, or iridescent colouring towards the time of sunset, it should be remembered that the former may cover large areas of cloud, or many isolated clouds, with one colour. Iridescence, on the other hand, usually shows much smaller areas of different colour on one cloud and the coloration is purer and more prismatic, in this respect resembling the colours of the rainbow.

When seen, remarks on the nature and extent of the colouring, the type of cloud and the approximate angular distance from the sun will be useful.

LIGHTNING

Anything unusual observed during a thunderstorm is worth recording. Some points in connection with lightning are given below.

Lightning varies in colour on different occasions; it is normally white, with perhaps a bluish tinge. Sometimes it is quite a bright violet. Other colours seen are reddish-white, yellowish-white, mauve and blue.

Variations of the ordinary appearance of forked lightning have been seen:—

- (i) Inequalities of brightness in different parts of the path, known as chain, or beaded lightning, from the impression left on the eye.
- (ii) Rocket lightning, so called from the relative slowness of the flash, so that the progressive lengthening of the streak can be seen.

The special form known as ball lightning resembles a ball of fire, either falling from a cloud or moving more or less horizontally. It usually lasts only a few seconds and may disappear noiselessly or with an abrupt clap of thunder. Ball lightning has been seen at close range and it has sometimes passed into or through a building. Careful observations of this uncommon, but not extremely rare, form of lightning are specially desired. Rare forms of lightning have been seen shooting upwards from the top of cumulonimbus cloud, in various branching or rocket-like forms.

A high frequency of visible flashes sometimes results from more than one storm in different directions being operative at the same time, so that at night there is almost continuous illumination of the sea or landscape. Such a lightning rate has been known to persist for several hours, but this is very rare.

Occasional reports of ships being struck by lightning are received, but this event is probably of much less frequent occurrence than in the days of wooden sailing ships. Descriptions of the effect on the ship and on the compasses (*see* page 113) will be of interest. Observations of recent years show that in nearly all cases the foremast or fore-part of the vessel is struck.

RAINBOWS

Solar rainbows. The normal appearance of a bright rainbow is as follows. The chief or primary bow shows the sequence of colours, violet, blue, green, yellow and red, the red being on the outside or top of the bow. In contact with the inside of this bow, one or two fainter "supernumerary bows" can frequently be seen with the colours in the same order, the first inner bow being much fainter than the primary bow and the second fainter still. Supernumerary bows do not, however, show the full range of spectrum colours; they are essentially red, or red and green, though other colours may be seen. In cases of exceptionally brilliant rainbows up to five supernumerary bows may be seen.

Concentric with the primary bow, but 9° outside it, is the secondary rainbow, in which the full range of colours appear in the reverse order, red inside and violet at the top or outside. The primary bow is formed by means of one internal reflection in each raindrop; the secondary bow is fainter, being produced by two such reflections. The sky between the primary and secondary bow is rather darker than that inside the primary bow, or the general sky in the neighbourhood. The secondary bow is commonly seen, but if the primary bow is faint the secondary one may not be visible.

Both the primary and secondary bows are seen when the observer has his back towards the sun. The sun, the observer's eye and the centres of the circles of which the primary and secondary rainbows form arcs, are always in a straight line, so that the azimuth of the highest part of the bow is 180° from the sun's azimuth. The normal radius of the arc of red light of the primary rainbow is 42° , of the violet arc $40\frac{1}{4}^\circ$; in the secondary bow the radii are 51° for red light and 54° for violet light, all the values given being approximate. Hence the normal breadth of the primary bow is about $1\frac{1}{4}^\circ$ and that of the secondary bow about 3° . It also follows that with the sun at an altitude of 42° the uppermost point of the primary bow is on the horizon, its centre being 42° below the horizon, and hence no primary bow can be formed if the sun's altitude exceeds 42° . Similarly no secondary rainbow can be formed if the sun's altitude exceeds 54° . Consequently rainbows are mainly morning and evening phenomena; nearer mid-day, if seen at all, the arc of the bow is shorter and the altitude small. Thunderstorm rain passing away from the observer gives the most favourable circumstances for the production of bright rainbows.

When the observer is at ground level and the rain cloud is distant, the rainbow arcs are always less than semicircles, unless the sun is on the horizon, when they form semicircles. When, however, the rain is near, and especially if the observer is in an elevated position, such as on the bridge of a ship, the bows will be greater than a semicircle and may even form complete circles. Several accounts have been received of bows forming complete circles as far as the water-line on each side of the ship.

One of the halo phenomena, the circumzenithal arc, may show bright rainbow colouring, but is always in such a position that the observer must face the sun to see it (*see page 102*).

Rainbows do not always show the same colouring. The colours seen, and their relative width and intensity, vary according to the size of the raindrops producing the bow. The colours are most brilliant and best defined with very large raindrops such as occur in thunderstorm rain. With fairly large drops, vivid violet and green may be seen, and also pure red, but little or no blue. With smaller drops the red weakens and with still smaller ones the green goes,

leaving only the violet. Just before sunset, when the sun is red in colour, especially in autumn and winter, an all-red rainbow may be produced.

If the raindrops are extremely small, as in the case in some cloud and in fog, a white rainbow may be formed. Such a bow is called a "fog-bow" or "Ulloa's Ring". In all rainbows there is some overlapping of the colours; in a white rainbow the overlapping is so complete that white light is reconstituted. For a white rainbow to be seen, the observer must be near the cloud or near or in the fog.

Lunar rainbows. Lunar rainbows are formed in the same way as solar ones, but are considerably rarer, having regard to the comparatively short periods that a bright moon is above the horizon. A lunar rainbow is usually fainter than a solar one and it is not always possible to distinguish colour; the appearance is then whitish. Quite frequently, however, colour may be observed; more rarely the whole sequence of colour can be seen. Secondary and supernumerary lunar rainbows are very rarely seen, on account of their faintness.

Reflection rainbows. These are seen occasionally on calm days when a sheet of water lies in front of or behind the observer standing with his back to the sun. Such bows are formed by rays of light illuminating the falling raindrops after reflection at the surface of the sheet of water. The centre of a reflection rainbow is thus as high above the horizon as the sun, or the same angular distance above, as the centre of the direct bow is below the horizon; consequently the arc, when complete, exceeds a semicircle. The direct and reflection rainbows intersect on the horizon, and the colours have the same sequence.

Observation of rainbows. The observer who wishes to make useful observations of normal rainbows should record the colours seen, in sequence, with an indication of their relative widths and intensities. If supernumerary bows are seen below the primary bow, the number of these and their colouring should be noted. If the secondary bow is unusually bright it is worth-while looking for supernumerary bows just above it; these have rarely been seen on account of their faintness. An additional primary bow may be seen when the sea is sufficiently calm to give a reflected image of the sun in the sea, which acts as the light source for the bow. The position of this bow with regard to that formed by the sun itself varies with the sun's altitude. The secondary bow from the sun's reflected image is almost always too faint to be observable.

Abnormal bows, or arcs of bows, perhaps intersecting the normal bows, and sometimes white in colour, have occasionally been seen and it is of special interest to record these as fully as possible, since no explanation has yet been found for some of them. They sometimes meet the horizon at the same point as one of the normal bows. In such cases the sequence of colour, or the absence of colour, should be noted. It is essential to give angular measurements of such bows, in the form of azimuths of the ends of the bow or arc, in which case the sun's azimuth should also be given. If a normal bow is also seen, the difference in azimuth between the points where the normal and abnormal bows meet the horizon will serve to establish the position of the latter. If an abnormal bow is seen concentric with the normal primary or secondary bow the difference of altitude of the bows at their highest point should be given.

SCINTILLATION

Scintillation, or twinkling, is the more or less rapid change of apparent brightness of a star, accompanied also at relatively low altitudes by colour

changes. It is due to minor changes in the refractive power of the atmosphere. The amount of twinkling is always greatest towards the horizon and least in the zenith. The general amount varies considerably on different nights, so that at the zenith twinkling may be considerable, slight or entirely absent. Nights without appreciable twinkling towards the horizon are rare. When the changes of brightness are small the fluctuations are slower; in proportion as they are greater they become more rapid.

Colour change is usually shown by stars at altitudes not exceeding 34° ; it never occurs at altitudes greater than 51° . The brightest stars, e.g., Sirius, at low altitudes show it most and, in favourable conditions, the changes may be very striking, the star flashing blood-red, emerald-green, bright blue, etc.

Scintillation is also observed in the case of terrestrial lights. The shimmering seen near the ground on a hot day is akin to it.

The bright planets do not usually appear to twinkle, as they have discs of definite size, although these are not visible without optical aid. Each point on the disc twinkles independently of the others, so that on the average the light is steady. The planet Mercury, only seen in twilight and at relatively low altitudes, may however be seen to twinkle because of the small size of its disc, and, exceptionally, other planets at very low altitudes may exhibit some twinkling.

The relative degree of twinkling in different parts of the world, e.g., in temperate as compared with tropical latitudes, is not very well known and any information bearing on this will be of interest. It is probably greatest in temperate latitudes, which are subject to the passage of depressions.

SKY COLORATION, DAY-TIME

The light of the sky in day-time is due to the illumination of the atmosphere by sunlight. The molecules of air exert a selective action on the colour constituents of sunlight, scattering mainly blue rays towards the observer and letting the others pass away.

Dust is always present in greater or less degree in the atmosphere, and in certain states of weather larger particles are present in the lower part of the atmosphere. The presence of dust tends to weaken the blue of the sky, because each particle reflects the whole of the white light. The greater the number of particles and the larger their size the more the sky becomes whitish-blue. For the same reason the cloudless sky is always whiter near the horizon than at higher altitudes. After heavy rain, such as that due to the passage of a depression, the larger dust particles have been washed out of the air and the sky is often a very deep blue.

The sky is often whitened within the region of smoke pollution from a large town. Natural dust from desert sources, at higher levels in the air, also has the same effect, e.g., the white skies seen in the region of the East Indies in the south-east monsoon, caused by dust from the Australian desert. The dust from great volcanic eruptions may whiten the sky for weeks or months afterwards, over more or less considerable areas of the globe. After the Krakatoa eruption the colour of the sky at various times of the day in equatorial regions was described as white, smoky, yellowish or reddish.

The unclouded sky may also be whitened by what is known as "optical haze", which also makes distant terrestrial objects indistinct. This occurs on hot days

and is the result of innumerable little convective uprisings of air, causing confused and variable refraction of light. The shimmering of terrestrial objects on a hot day also results from the same cause.

The sky may sometimes be covered by a layer of cirrostratus, so thin and uniform as not to be visible as cloud, but sufficient to dim the blueness, giving the sky a milky appearance.

A somewhat dirty green coloration of clear patches in a generally overcast sky is sometimes seen at sea in the day-time, not to be confused with the green coloration of part of the clear twilight sky in the west. This day-time coloration is associated with bad or windy weather, or is considered a prognostic of such weather. Observations of it and of the accompanying or subsequent weather will be welcomed, as it is not yet fully understood. It appears to occur most frequently in the Roaring Forties.

SKY COLORATION AT TWILIGHT

When clouds, particularly middle and upper clouds, occur about the time of sunset or sunrise, or in bright twilight, their coloration is often very beautiful. The cloud colours are mainly shades of orange, rose or red, since the direct sunlight illuminating the cloud has passed through a great length of the lower layers of the atmosphere. Shades of purple are sometimes seen, since a cloud may at the same time be indirectly illuminated by scattered blue light from higher atmospheric levels. On rare occasions colouring of exceptional magnificence occurs.

Colour phenomena also occur in a cloudless sky during the twilight periods. These vary considerably and are best developed in arid or semi-arid land regions. Some of those which occur more commonly everywhere are mentioned here. The Primary Twilight Arch appears after the sun has set, as a bright, but not very sharply-defined, segment of reddish or yellowish light, resting on the western horizon. After the sun has set, a pink or purple glow may be seen, covering a considerable part of the western sky, known as the First Purple Light. It reaches its greatest brightness when the sun is about 4° below the horizon, and disappears when it is about 6° below.

At sunset, a steely-blue segment, darker than the rest of the sky, begins to rise from the *eastern* horizon. This is the shadow of the earth thrown by the sun on to the earth's atmosphere. The Earth-shadow is bordered by a narrow band of rose or purple colour, called the Counterglow. The whole rises fairly quickly in altitude, the shadow encroaching on the counterglow and soon obliterating it. With increasing general darkness the edge of the shadow weakens, but may sometimes be traced up to its passage through the zenith. In the later stages of twilight, this shadow edge has come down nearly to the *western* horizon, leaving a slightly more luminous segment between it and the horizon. This is the Secondary Twilight Arch. Just before the ending of astronomical twilight, it is sometimes seen as a fairly well defined whitish arch on the horizon, with an altitude of only a few degrees at its apex. This might be confused with an auroral arc visible at very low altitude.

Analogous phenomena, in the reverse order, occur before sunrise. Other colours are often seen in the cloudless twilight sky, portions of which may be green, yellow, orange or red, according to the amount of dust and water-vapour present in the air. Instead of the purple light after sunset, the sky very often shows some shade of clear green, probably when the air is relatively free from dust.

SKY COLORATION AT NIGHT

Between the visible stars, brighter and fainter, the background of the clear night sky is not wholly dark. Part of the general luminosity of the sky is due to the accumulated light of the brighter telescopic stars, which cannot be seen as individual stars with the unaided eye. The remainder is due to the airglow, which may vary in intensity on different nights, *see* page 89. The airglow is greenish in colour but it is usually too faint for the colour to be seen. In bright moonlight the sky is generally somewhat greenish, but it is probable that when the air is relatively dust-free and the full moon is at high altitude it becomes bluish. Opinion varies on this point, as the colour of faint light is not equally well seen by different persons.

TWILIGHT

Twilight is due to the illumination of the higher levels of the atmosphere by the sun when this is below the observer's horizon. The last stage of twilight is very faint and indefinite and it is not possible to say exactly when it ends. Astronomical twilight is defined as ending when the sun's centre is 18° below the horizon, since by that time sixth magnitude stars, the faintest that can be seen by the naked eye, have become visible in the region of the zenith.

Another and shorter twilight period, that of civil twilight, is recognized; this ends when the sun is 6° below the horizon. This is assumed to mark the ending of the time when outdoor labour is possible. The period of civil twilight is important to the seaman because experience has shown that subsequent to it the horizon is not sufficiently clearly visible to obtain good stellar observations. In the later stages of civil twilight such observations can be made, the brighter fixed stars being visible and the horizon still remaining clearly visible. Similar definitions apply to morning twilight.

The duration of twilight varies according to the latitude. It is shortest in the tropics where the apparent track of the sun down to the horizon is steepest. It also varies to some extent at different seasons, being shortest in all latitudes about the time of the equinoxes. The following table shows the extent of these variations between the equator and latitude 60°N or S ; A.T. and C.T. refer to astronomical and civil twilight respectively.

	Equator		30°		50°		60°	
	A.T.	C.T.	A.T.	C.T.	A.T.	C.T.	A.T.	C.T.
	hr min	hr min	hr min	hr min	hr min	hr min	hr min	hr min
Midwinter ...	1 16	0 26	1 26	0 31	2 1	0 45	2 48	1 9
Equinoxes ...	1 10	0 24	1 20	0 28	1 52	0 37	2 31	0 48
Midsummer ...	1 15	0 26	1 37	0 32	—	0 51	—	1 59

In the belt between latitude $48\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ and the Arctic Circle there is no true night for some weeks of the midsummer period, as the sun does not sink as much as 18° below the horizon. There is a similar belt in the southern hemisphere, six months later, during the southern summer. In polar regions there is a long twilight period of about two months between the long polar periods of summer daylight and winter night.

At rare intervals abnormally long duration of twilight is observed. This is caused by the presence of fine dust suspended in the upper air. The dust may

be due to a great volcanic eruption, such as that of Krakatoa in 1883 or to the fall of an exceptionally large meteor, such as that of 30th June 1908 in Siberia. Observations of exceptionally bright and long-continued twilight will be of value.

WATERSPOUTS

A waterspout is a whirlwind over the sea, appearing as a funnel-shaped column usually extending from the lower surface of cumulonimbus cloud to the sea. In travelling over the sea this column often becomes oblique or bent; it may become looped. The spout is in rapid rotation and the wind around it follows a circular path. Although very local, this wind is often violent, causing confused but not high sea. A noise of "rushing wind" may be heard. A waterspout in most cases forms downwards from the base of the cloud, appearing in its earlier stages as a dark funnel hanging from the cloud. The sea surface below becomes agitated and the funnel finally dips into the centre of the spray. The waterspout may last from a few minutes up to half an hour or more. Sometimes the spout, formed of condensed water-vapour, does not reach the sea, and retreats again up into the cloud. Several may be seen at the same time.

Observations of waterspouts, with sketches or photographs, and details of their mode of formation and dissipation are of value. The diameter of the spout and the direction of rotation should be noted. If it is possible to determine the rate of rotation, this information is very valuable. Sometimes a streak or mark on the spout enables this to be done. The spout is a hollow tube; double walled spouts have occasionally been recorded. The approximate vertical height of a spout may be found by sextant measurement of the angle subtended, together with the known or estimated distance from the ship. The height of a waterspout from sea surface to cloud base is usually from 1,000 feet to 2,000 feet. It may, however, be as little as 100 feet or as much as 5,000 feet. There is a very great variation in the observed diameters of waterspouts, from 3 feet to about 700 feet.

Though waterspouts are infrequent in high latitudes their frequency does not depend wholly on latitude. In general, more are observed in lower latitudes but their frequency in tropical and equatorial regions varies considerably in different oceans. Waterspouts are most common in the following regions: the Equatorial Atlantic; the South Atlantic; the eastern coast of the United States, south of lat. 35°N; the Gulf of Mexico; part of the eastern Mediterranean; the Bay of Bengal; the Gulf of Siam.

CHAPTER 12

Marine Phenomena

SEA COLORATION

The normal colour of the sea in the open ocean in middle and low latitudes is an intense blue or ultramarine. The following modifications occur elsewhere:

- (i) In all coastal regions and in the open sea in higher latitudes, where the minute floating animal and vegetable life of the sea, called plankton, is in greater abundance, the blue of the sea is modified to shades of bluish-green and green. This results from a soluble yellow pigment, given off by the plant constituents of the plankton.
- (ii) When the plankton is very dense, the colour of the organisms themselves may discolour the sea, giving it a more or less intense brown or red colour. The Red Sea, Gulf of California, the region of the Peru Current, South African waters and the Malabar Coast of India are particularly liable to this, seasonally.
- (iii) The plankton is sometimes killed more or less suddenly, by changes of sea temperature, etc., producing dirty-brown or grey-brown discoloration and "stinking water". This occurs on an unusually extensive scale at times off the Peruvian coast, where the phenomenon is called "Aguaje".
- (iv) Larger masses of animate matter, such as fish spawn or floating kelp, may produce other kinds of temporary discoloration.
- (v) Mud brought down by rivers produces discoloration, which in the case of the great rivers may affect a large sea area. Soil or sand particles may be carried out to sea by wind or duststorms, and volcanic dust may fall over a sea area. In all such cases the water is more or less muddy in appearance. Submarine earthquakes may also produce mud or sand discoloration in relatively shallow water, and oil has sometimes been seen to gush up. The sea may be extensively covered with floating pumice stone after a volcanic eruption.

It is desirable to record all cases of unusual sea coloration. To determine the cause, microscopic examination of a sample may be necessary, and whenever possible a sample should be taken for subsequent examination at the National Institute of Oceanography. The sample can be preserved for a considerable time if a few drops of 40 per cent formalin or of a strong solution of corrosive sublimate are added. Port Meteorological Officers in U.K. ports carry sets of bottles and preservative for this purpose and will supply any shipmaster on request.

ABNORMAL RISES OF SEA LEVEL AND ABNORMAL WAVES

Both these phenomena are popularly included in the term "tidal waves", but neither has any connection with the tides. If either occurs, however, at a coast in conjunction with a high tide, its effect will obviously be greater and more destructive.

Abnormal rises of sea level, on which ordinary sea and swell waves are superimposed, are produced by severe storms. High water levels are thus caused on many coasts, but fortunately the rise is rarely large enough to cause great damage. With strong westerly winds the water level at Cuxhaven, at the mouth of the Elbe, may rise 8 feet above the normal. On exceptional occasions the rise has reached 11 feet above the normal. Destructive rises mainly occur in connection with tropical revolving storms; rises of as much as 19 and 15 feet have been experienced on parts of the east coast of the United States.

Submarine earthquakes and landslides, and violent volcanic eruptions near a coast or on an island, produce abnormal waves. Sometimes these are visible waves, at other times shock waves, the latter giving the sensation in severe cases of the ship having struck a rock. The visible waves may travel many hundreds of miles, or in very severe disturbances for many thousands of miles.

Single high waves in fair weather, with smooth or moderate sea, are almost certainly of seismic origin. Sometimes there may be two or more such waves at intervals. On the other hand, isolated giant waves which have been reported in gale conditions, are probably caused by a synchronism of the larger waves in a sea or swell cycle. Some of these have been estimated to reach or exceed a height of 60 feet.

Observations of abnormal waves and rises of sea level are always of interest and should be carefully recorded. Whenever an actual shock is felt, it should be described as fully as possible, stating the exact time and the ship's position.

MARINE BIOLUMINESCENCE

This phenomenon exhibits many different forms. The more remarkable of these include:

- (a) the diffused white light, which may give enough light to read by, or to illuminate clouds: it is called "white water" or "milky sea". The even glow is believed to be due to light from marine bacteria of microscopic size. It is especially prevalent in the Arabian Sea.
- (b) systems of moving parallel bands.
- (c) rapid light flashes on the sea surface.
- (d) upwelling of subsurface water, breaking into vivid luminosity at the surface.
- (e) the great systems of bands rotating round a central luminous "hub", known as "phosphorescent wheels".

The last-named is a well-authenticated but, in general, rather infrequent phenomenon, apparently confined to the Indian Ocean north of the equator and the China Sea region. One or more wheels may occur simultaneously, rotating in the same or opposite directions.

While progress has been made in classifying the varied forms of luminescence, it is not yet possible to explain how the majority of them are caused, either as regards the animal organisms involved or the nature of the stimulus producing light-emission. Many of the apparent movements of luminous areas, e.g. those of the "spokes" of the wheel, are much too rapid to be caused by the actual movements of organisms through the water. The most inexplicable phenomenon is that of luminescence in the air a few feet above the sea surface when there is no light in the water; this has been reported on several occasions.

Most of our knowledge of the varied forms of marine bioluminescence has been derived from the observations recorded in ships' logbooks and continued observations will be of the greatest value. When sufficient information is accumulated marine biologists will be able to work on the problems connected with the causation of the various phenomena. Observations should be as precise and detailed as possible and should include estimations of the direction, length and width of moving bands and of the size of what appear to be individual luminous organisms. A water sample would be useful if it could be treated with a preservative. In the case of moving or rotating bands a careful estimate of the time interval between the passage of successive bands should be made. If a wheel is seen it is important to note if it has a visible centre and to estimate the distance of the centre from the ship, also to record the direction of rotation of the wheel. The wheel sometimes forms from parallel moving bands, or changes into these, and all changes of form of the luminescence should be recorded.

Interesting experiments on the possible nature of the stimulus may be made: (i) By trying the effect of flashing light on the sea, e.g. from an Aldis light; sometimes this initiates or increases luminescence, but not always. (ii) The effect of the switching on and off of radar. (iii) No observation of a wheel recorded by a sailing vessel has been found and it is therefore possible that it is produced by sound or vibration waves through the water from a modern vessel. It would be of great value to note the effect on the wheel, if any, produced by stopping the ship for a few minutes.

The luminescence usually appears white, in the case of "white water", and various shades of blue and green, in other forms. Other colours have, however, been recorded. In all observations it is important to give the colour; in the case of the more striking moving forms, observers apparently find them so impressive in other ways that this important factor is almost invariably overlooked. There is thus very little information, for example, about the colour of the light of the wheel.

ABNORMAL COMPASS DEVIATIONS

A ship's magnetic compass may show appreciable deviation during the progress of a considerable or severe magnetic storm (*see* Magnetic Disturbances, page 82).

When an aurora of an active type is seen, especially in latitudes lower than those in which aurora is normally seen, the possibility of deflections of the magnetic compass should always be borne in mind. Mere brightness of aurora in a region when auroræ frequently occur is no criterion of the occurrence of a magnetic storm, e.g., a bright, colourless and relatively quiescent aurora seen in August or September in the western Atlantic on the Belle Isle route.

If a ship be struck by lightning, a sudden abnormal deviation of the compass may result. This error may be of a temporary or a permanent nature. Chronometers may also be affected.

Abnormal magnetic variation occurs locally in various regions. These variations, if experienced, should always be recorded, particularly if no mention of abnormal variation is made in the appropriate Admiralty *Pilot* or on Admiralty charts of the region.

Part IV Summary of Meteorological Work at Sea

CHAPTER 13

Organization of Voluntary Meteorological Work at Sea

Historical. M. F. Maury, an officer of the U.S. Navy, was the first man to realise the commercial and scientific value of weather information collected from ships. Due to his initiative, the first International Meteorological Conference was held at Brussels in 1853 to consider international co-operation and a uniform system of observation. Following this conference, the British Meteorological Office was established in 1854, under Admiral Fitzroy, as a Department of the Board of Trade.

On assuming office, Fitzroy issued a circular letter to the captains of merchant ships, inviting their co-operation in observing the weather at sea, and by 1855, 105 ships of the Mercantile Marine and 32 ships of the Royal Navy were equipped with instruments for this purpose.

Observations were originally recorded in a "Weather Register" whose general form was agreed upon at the Brussels Conference. In 1874, Captain Henry Toynbee, who had then been Marine Superintendent of the Meteorological Office for seven years, drew up a "Meteorological Log" based on the original Weather Register, but incorporating improvements. This was approved internationally and brought into use by the Meteorological Office for British ships. This Log has been the means of providing climatological atlases for all oceans, and has provided a basis for scientific investigation. It underwent very little change up to the end of World War I, when the use of climatological logbooks was gradually discontinued in favour of observations made at synoptic hours and transmitted by radio. In 1953 the method of setting out the observations was entirely rearranged to produce the present-day meteorological logbook which is a combined record of observations made and radio weather messages sent.

In 1861, FitzRoy instituted the system whereby certain ports were informed by telegraph of impending gales and were asked to hoist visual gale warning signals for the benefit of shipping. Except for a short break in 1867-68, this system has been maintained up to the present day.

The invention of wireless telegraphy opened up a new era in marine meteorology. As early as 1906, H.M. ships sent observations to the Meteorological Office by radio, while in 1909 a number of transatlantic liners commenced a similar service of reports by radio. Owing to the disruption caused by World War I, it was not until 1921, as a result of arrangements made by the International Meteorological Organization, that radio weather messages from merchant ships were organized on a satisfactory scale, and an international code was introduced for the purpose. In this year a number of Selected Ships commenced not only recording their observations, but transmitting them by radio in a special code at the internationally agreed hours of 0000, 0600, 1200 and 1800 GMT. These messages were sent from all oceans through designated shore radio stations to various meteorological centres in accordance with an international scheme. The number of ships which continued to merely record their

observations six times daily, at the end of the watch, was gradually reduced as the number recording and reporting at the synoptic hour was increased. Today all observing ships report at the main synoptic hours and the data recorded in this manner can still be used for climatological purposes.

At a meeting of the International Convention for Safety of Life at Sea, held in 1929, provision was made (in Article 35) for the international encouragement of meteorological work at sea. This Convention was revised in 1948 and again in 1960 (*see* Chapter 14).

During World War II observations from merchant ships again ceased. In 1946, as a result of a conference held in London, it was agreed that all meteorological services of the British Commonwealth would co-operate in organizing meteorological work at sea. In 1947 the International Meteorological Organization introduced a new universal code for the sending of radio weather messages by voluntary observing ships of all nations.

Throughout the history of the Marine Branch of the Meteorological Office, observations at sea have been made on a voluntary basis. The number of ships making observations at any time depends upon requirements but is limited by practical considerations. The captains and officers of ships undertaking this work are referred to as the "Corps of Voluntary Marine Observers", their ships comprising the "Voluntary Observing Fleet".

Marine meteorology and the British Commonwealth. The arrangements for this generally follow those organized and kept up to date by the World Meteorological Organization (*see* page 117).

Voluntary Observing Ships of all nations are divided into three main classes: "Selected Ships", "Supplementary Ships" and "Auxiliary Ships". The first-named observe wind, weather, pressure and barometric tendency, temperatures, clouds and waves. They are equipped with a marine mercurial barometer fitted with a correction slide, a barograph, wet- and dry-bulb thermometers in a modified marine screen, and a sea thermometer and bucket.

Supplementary Ships make the same observations with the exception of barometric tendency, sea temperature and waves, and are not therefore equipped with barograph, bucket or sea thermometer.

Auxiliary Ships make similar observations to those made by Supplementary Ships, except that they do not report cloud. They use their own instruments, which have been previously checked by a Port Meteorological Officer or Merchant Navy Agent, to observe pressure and temperature. They only record and report when in areas where shipping is normally sparse.

In addition to the above, many ships engaged in the coastwise and short-sea trades around the British Isles are supplied with a sea-temperature bucket and thermometers. They radio sea-water temperatures to the British Meteorological Office. Several ships trading across the North Sea, and trawlers operating in distant waters, are asked to radio reports of wind and weather, not involving the use of instruments, at synoptic hours whenever possible. A number of distant-water trawlers, however, with a special aptitude for the work, are recruited as Supplementary Ships.

Each Meteorological Service is responsible for recruiting its own ships. In addition, each Service may recruit ships of other registries which are normally based in their ports.

Representatives of Commonwealth and foreign Meteorological Services may, if they wish, visit any British Selected or Supplementary Ship to discuss local

problems, supply forms, maps or local information, attend instruments, take extracts from logbooks or express appreciation of services rendered. They may also, if the situation warrants (i.e., paucity of observations in their area), visit other British ships and request their co-operation as Auxiliary Ships, when in the area of the Service concerned. Commonwealth Services inform the British Meteorological Office of the names of Selected and Supplementary Ships recruited by them. The British Meteorological Office promulgates this information, together with the names of all ships recruited in Britain, in each July number of *The Marine Observer*.

The World Meteorological Organization. While the Commonwealth Conference provides for uniformity of practice in marine meteorology among the various Services of the British Commonwealth, the World Meteorological Organization performs a similar function internationally.

Meteorology is so international in character that co-operation is necessary between all countries of the world. This was recognized as long ago as 1872 when the International Meteorological Organization (IMO) was formed, which has ever since acted as an advisory body to National Meteorological Services, its primary functions being the standardization of codes and procedure, the improvement of meteorological practice, and the promotion of research. The Selected Ship Scheme and the issue of weather bulletins for shipping on a world-wide basis, are co-ordinated in this way.

The IMO was a semi-official body, and in 1947 it was decided that, in view of the growing world importance of meteorology for commercial, economic and scientific purposes, it was necessary to change the status of this organization. As a result an intergovernmental body, the World Meteorological Organization (WMO), held its first congress in Paris during 1951, and took over the duties and responsibilities of the IMO. In this organization technical problems are deliberated by a number of technical commissions, whose members are all experts in their particular sphere. All aspects of maritime meteorology are thus dealt with by the Commission for Maritime Meteorology, which advises the WMO as necessary.

The instructions to observers issued by the Marine Branch of the Meteorological Office conform to the advice of the WMO. Such changes of codes and procedure as occur from time to time are the result of international agreement. It is inevitable that progress in meteorology should bring changes of procedure. Such changes are kept to a minimum, and the basic aim is that every change should achieve greater world-wide application and uniformity, and hence simplicity.

All meteorological work done by ships' officers is entirely voluntary. Only by a voluntary scheme can the requisite high standard of observations be maintained. The benefit of this work to mariners lies in the fact that it forms the basis of the meteorological services for shipping outlined below.

Voluntary observing ships are requested to report their observations at the standard synoptic hours, viz. 0000, 0600, 1200, 1800 GMT, using the standard International Weather Code, either in full or abbreviated form. Information regarding this code and full instructions for coding are to be found in the *Ships' Code and Decode Book* (Met. O. 509) or in the *Admiralty List of Radio Signals*, Vol. 3.

Meteorological services for shipping. The first meteorological service for shipping was the issue of visual Gale Warnings, started in 1861. In 1924, a Radio

Weather Shipping Bulletin was instituted; this contained weather reports from certain coastal stations and forecasts for areas around the British Isles. Since then, meteorological warnings of all kinds have been broadcast direct to shipping by radio on an international basis, under arrangements made by the World Meteorological Organization.

Present-day weather messages to shipping aim at providing not only forecasts but such basic information as will enable simple synoptic charts to be drawn on board ship. Such messages are generally known as "bulletins". They usually contain:

- A brief statement of the meteorological situation.

- Area forecasts.

- Land Station reports.

- Ships' reports.

- Analyses in the International Analysis Code (I.A.C. (Fleet)).

An example of such a bulletin is the Atlantic Weather Bulletin, full particulars of which are given in *Met. O. 509, Ships' Code and Decode Book*, and in the *Admiralty List of Radio Signals*, Vol. 3. Briefer bulletins for the benefit of coastal shipping are issued by GPO coast stations on W/T and R/T and by the BBC (*see Met. O. Leaflet No. 3*, obtainable free from the Meteorological Office).

The experience of generations of observers is available in the vast number of observations from the sea that have been collected since 1854. The task of the Marine Branch of the Meteorological Office has been not only to collect these observations, but to classify and analyse them scientifically and to prepare climatological and other material based upon them, for the information of mariners, and of the world in general. The observations, being (except for those from weather ships) the only ones available from the oceans, are put to many other useful purposes, and are of great value for research into meteorological problems. Most of the analysis is carried out with the aid of punched cards, and the final results, after careful scrutiny by climatological experts, are issued in the form of atlases for the different oceans. The atlases contain mean values for each month of the various meteorological elements observed at sea, and enable the user to assess average conditions at any time in almost any part of the world. The following atlases are available for free issue to ships of the Voluntary Observing Fleet and may be inspected at any Port Meteorological Office:

- Quarterly Surface Current Charts of the Atlantic Ocean.

- Quarterly Surface Current Charts of the Eastern North Pacific Ocean.

- Quarterly Surface Current Charts of the Western North Pacific Ocean.

- Quarterly Surface Current Charts of the South Pacific Ocean.

- Indian Ocean Currents.

- Monthly Sea Surface Temperatures and Surface Current Circulation of Japan Sea and Adjacent Waters.

- Monthly Sea Surface Temperatures of Australian and New Zealand Waters.

- Monthly Meteorological Charts and Current Chart of the Greenland and Barents Seas.

- Monthly Meteorological Charts of the Atlantic Ocean.

- Monthly Meteorological Charts of the Eastern Pacific Ocean.

- Monthly Meteorological Charts of the Indian Ocean.

Guidance for conduct of the work at sea. Direct contact between the Marine Branch of the Meteorological Office and ships' captains and observers is

maintained through Port Meteorological Officers at Cardiff, Glasgow, Liverpool, Hull and London and Merchant Navy Agents at Newcastle-upon-Tyne and Southampton.

Indirect contact with the Observing Fleet is maintained through the medium of *The Marine Observer*, a quarterly publication which contains articles on meteorology, oceanography, ice, etc., of interest to seamen. A large section in each number is devoted to observations of phenomena of a meteorological or general scientific nature, mostly extracted from the meteorological logbooks of ships of the British Commonwealth.

Instruments are supplied to ships either by Port Meteorological Officers or by Agents and are delivered by hand. When it is desired to return instruments lent by the Meteorological Office, the appropriate Port Meteorological Officer or Agent should be advised. When this is not possible, as for example at certain small ports, application should be made to the Marine Superintendent of the Meteorological Office for instructions. Similar remarks apply to the return of damaged instruments for repair or replacement.

Any accident to an instrument, even though no apparent damage is done, should be reported to the Port Meteorological Officer or Agent. This is necessary because the constants of the instrument may have been altered without any apparent difference in its working. On no account should a barometer or any other instrument belonging to the Meteorological Office be sent to an instrument maker for repair, or any attempt be made to repair the instrument on board the ship.

CHAPTER 14

International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1960*

SAFETY OF NAVIGATION

Regulation 2: *Danger Messages*

(a) The master of every ship which meets with dangerous ice, a dangerous derelict, or any other direct danger to navigation, or a tropical storm, or encounters sub-freezing air temperatures associated with gale force winds causing severe ice accretion on superstructures, or winds of force 10 or above on the Beaufort scale for which no storm warning has been received is bound to communicate the information by all the means at his disposal to ships in the vicinity, and also to the competent authorities at the first point on the coast with which he can communicate. The form in which the information is sent is not obligatory. It may be transmitted either in plain language (preferably English) or by means of the International Code of Signals. It should be broadcast to all ships in the vicinity and sent to the first point on the coast to which communication can be made, with a request that it be transmitted to the appropriate authorities.

(b) Each Contracting Government will take all steps necessary to ensure that when intelligence of any of the dangers specified in paragraph (a) is received, it will be promptly brought to the knowledge of those concerned and communicated to other interested Governments.

(c) The transmission of messages respecting the dangers specified is free of cost to the ships concerned.

(d) All radio messages issued under paragraph (a) of this Regulation shall be preceded by the Safety Signal, using the procedure as prescribed by the I.T.U. Radio Regulations.

Regulation 3: *Information required in Danger Messages*

The following information is required in danger messages:

(a) Ice, Derelicts and other Direct Dangers to Navigation.

(i) the kind of ice, derelict or danger observed;

(ii) the position of the ice, derelict or danger when last observed;

(iii) the time and date (Greenwich Mean Time) when danger last observed.

(b) Tropical Storms—(Hurricanes in the West Indies, Typhoons in the China Sea, Cyclones in Indian waters, and storms of a similar nature in other regions).

(i) A statement that a tropical storm has been encountered. This obligation should be interpreted in a broad spirit, and information transmitted whenever the master has good reason to believe that a tropical storm is developing or exists in his neighbourhood.

*See *International Conference on Safety of Life at Sea, 1960*, H.M.S.O., London.

(ii) Time, date (Greenwich Mean Time) and position of ship when the observation was taken.

(iii) As much of the following information as is practicable should be included in the message:

—barometric pressure, preferably corrected (stating, millibars, inches, or millimetres, and whether corrected or uncorrected);

—barometric tendency (the change in barometric pressure during the past three hours);

—true wind direction;

—wind force (Beaufort scale);

—state of the sea (smooth, moderate, rough, high);

—swell (slight, moderate, heavy) and the true direction from which it comes. Period or length of swell (short, average, long) would also be of value;

—true course and speed of ship.

(c) Subsequent Observations. When a master has reported a tropical or other dangerous storm, it is desirable, but not obligatory, that further observations be made and transmitted hourly, if practicable, but in any case at intervals of not more than three hours, so long as the ship remains under the influence of the storm.

(d) Winds of force 10 or above on the Beaufort scale for which no storm warning has been received.

This is intended to deal with storms other than the tropical storms referred to in paragraph (b); when such a storm is encountered, the message should contain similar information to that listed under paragraph (b) but excluding the details concerning sea and swell.

(e) Sub-freezing air temperatures associated with gale force winds causing severe ice accretion on superstructures.

(i) Time and Date (Greenwich Mean Time).

(ii) Air temperature.

(iii) Sea temperature (if practicable).

(iv) Wind force and direction.

Examples

Ice

TTT Ice. Large berg sighted in 4605 N, 4410 W, at 0800 GMT. May 15.

Derelicts

TTT Derelict. Observed derelict almost submerged in 4006 N, 1243 W, at 1630 GMT. April 21.

Danger to Navigation

TTT Navigation. Alpha lightship not on station. 1800 GMT. January 3.

Tropical Storm

TTT Storm. 0030 GMT. August 18. 2204 N, 11354 E. Barometer corrected 994 millibars, tendency down 6 millibars. Wind NW, force 9, heavy squalls. Heavy easterly swell. Course 067, 5 knots.

TTT Storm. Appearances indicate approach of hurricane. 1300 GMT. September 14. 2200 N, 7236 W. Barometer corrected 29.64 inches, tendency down .015 inches. Wind NE, force 8, frequent rain squalls. Course 035, 9 knots.

TTT Storm. Conditions indicate intense cyclone has formed. 0200 GMT. May 4. 1620 N, 9203 E. Barometer uncorrected 753 millimetres, tendency down 5 millimetres. Wind S by W, force 5. Course 300, 8 knots.

TTT Storm. Typhoon to southeast. 0300 GMT. June 12. 1812 N, 12605 E. Barometer falling rapidly. Wind increasing from N.

TTT Storm. Wind force 11, no storm warning received. 0300 GMT. May 4. 4830 N, 30 W. Barometer corrected 983 millibars, tendency down 4 millibars. Wind SW, force 11 veering. Course 260, 6 knots.

Icing

TTT experiencing severe icing. 1400 GMT. March 2. 69 N, 10 W. Air temperature 18 (F). Sea temperature 29 (F). Wind NE, force 8.

Regulation 4: Meteorological Services

(a) The Contracting Governments undertake to encourage the collection of meteorological data by ships at sea and to arrange for their examination, dissemination and exchange in the manner most suitable for the purpose of aiding navigation. Administrations shall encourage the use of instruments of a high degree of accuracy, and shall facilitate the checking of such instruments upon request.

(b) In particular, the Contracting Governments undertake to co-operate in carrying out, as far as practicable, the following meteorological arrangements:

- (i) To warn ships of gales, storms and tropical storms, both by the issue of radio messages and by the display of appropriate signals at coastal points.
- (ii) To issue daily, by radio, weather bulletins suitable for shipping, containing data of existing weather, waves and ice, forecasts, and when practicable, sufficient additional information to enable simple weather charts to be prepared at sea and also to encourage the transmission of suitable facsimile weather charts.
- (iii) To prepare and issue such publications as may be necessary for the efficient conduct of meteorological work at sea and to arrange, if practicable, for the publication and making available of daily weather charts for the information of departing ships.
- (iv) To arrange for selected ships to be equipped with tested instruments (such as a barometer, a barograph, a psychrometer, and suitable apparatus for measuring sea temperature) for use in this service, and to take meteorological observations at main standard times for surface synoptic observations (at least four times daily, whenever circumstances permit) and to encourage other ships to take observations in a modified form, particularly when in areas where shipping is sparse; these ships to transmit their observations by radio for the benefit of the various official meteorological services, repeating the information for the benefit of ships in the vicinity. When in the vicinity of a tropical storm, or of a suspected tropical storm, ships should be encouraged to take and transmit their observations at more frequent intervals whenever practicable, bearing in mind navigational preoccupations of ships' officers during storm conditions.
- (v) To arrange for the reception and transmission by coast radio stations of weather messages from and to ships. Ships which are unable to communicate direct with shore shall be encouraged to relay their weather messages through ocean weather ships or through other ships which are in contact with shore.
- (vi) To encourage all masters to inform ships in the vicinity and also shore

stations whenever they experience a wind speed of 50 knots or more (force 10 on the Beaufort scale).

- (vii) To endeavour to obtain a uniform procedure in regard to the international meteorological services already specified, and, as far as is practicable, to conform to the Technical Regulations and recommendations made by the World Meteorological Organization, to which the Contracting Governments may refer for study and advice any meteorological question which may arise in carrying out the present Convention.

(c) The information provided for in this Regulation shall be furnished in form for transmission and transmitted in the order of priority prescribed by the Radio Regulations, and during transmission "to all stations" of meteorological information, forecasts and warnings, all ship stations must conform to the provisions of the Radio Regulations.

(d) Forecasts, warnings, synoptic and other meteorological reports intended for ships shall be issued and disseminated by the national service in the best position to serve various zones and areas, in accordance with mutual arrangements made by the Contracting Governments concerned.

TABLE 1
TEMPERATURE CORRECTION OF THE MET. O. KEW-PATTERN BAROMETER MK I
(Inch Scale)

To be used with barometers having National Physical Laboratory certificate dated ON OR BEFORE 31st DECEMBER 1954.

These corrections are to be subtracted from the barometer readings to reduce them to standard temperature conditions.

Attached Thermo- meter (°F)	Barometer Reading (Inches)										
	26-0	26-5	27-0	27-5	28-0	28-5	29-0	29-5	30-0	30-5	31-0
40	·024	·024	·025	·026	·026	·027	·027	·028	·028	·029	·029
41	·026	·027	·028	·028	·029	·029	·030	·030	·031	·031	·032
42	·029	·030	·030	·031	·031	·032	·033	·033	·034	·034	·035
43	·031	·032	·033	·033	·034	·035	·035	·036	·037	·037	·038
44	·034	·035	·035	·036	·037	·037	·038	·039	·039	·040	·041
45	·036	·037	·038	·039	·039	·040	·041	·042	·042	·043	·044
46	·039	·040	·040	·041	·042	·043	·044	·044	·045	·046	·047
47	·041	·042	·043	·044	·045	·046	·046	·047	·048	·049	·050
48	·044	·045	·046	·046	·047	·048	·049	·050	·051	·052	·053
49	·046	·047	·048	·049	·050	·051	·052	·053	·054	·055	·056
50	·049	·050	·051	·052	·053	·054	·055	·056	·057	·058	·058
51	·051	·052	·053	·054	·055	·056	·057	·058	·059	·060	·061
52	·054	·055	·056	·057	·058	·059	·060	·061	·062	·063	·064
53	·056	·057	·058	·060	·061	·062	·063	·064	·065	·066	·067
54	·059	·060	·061	·062	·063	·064	·066	·067	·068	·069	·070
55	·061	·062	·064	·065	·066	·067	·068	·070	·071	·072	·073
56	·064	·065	·066	·067	·069	·070	·071	·072	·074	·075	·076
57	·066	·067	·069	·070	·071	·073	·074	·075	·076	·078	·079
58	·069	·070	·071	·073	·074	·075	·077	·078	·079	·081	·082
59	·071	·072	·074	·075	·077	·078	·079	·081	·082	·083	·085
60	·074	·075	·076	·078	·079	·081	·082	·084	·085	·086	·088
61	·076	·078	·079	·080	·082	·083	·085	·086	·088	·089	·091
62	·079	·080	·082	·083	·085	·086	·088	·089	·091	·092	·094
63	·081	·083	·084	·086	·087	·089	·090	·092	·093	·095	·097
64	·083	·085	·087	·088	·090	·091	·093	·095	·096	·098	·099
65	·086	·088	·089	·091	·093	·094	·096	·097	·099	·101	·102
66	·088	·090	·092	·094	·095	·097	·099	·100	·102	·104	·105
67	·091	·093	·094	·096	·098	·100	·101	·103	·105	·107	·108
68	·093	·095	·097	·099	·101	·102	·104	·106	·108	·109	·111
69	·096	·098	·100	·101	·103	·105	·107	·109	·110	·112	·114
70	·098	·100	·102	·104	·106	·108	·110	·111	·113	·115	·117
71	·101	·103	·105	·107	·108	·110	·112	·114	·116	·118	·120
72	·103	·105	·107	·109	·111	·113	·115	·117	·119	·121	·123
73	·106	·108	·110	·112	·114	·116	·118	·120	·122	·124	·126
74	·108	·110	·112	·114	·116	·118	·121	·123	·125	·127	·129
75	·111	·113	·115	·117	·119	·121	·123	·125	·127	·130	·132
76	·113	·115	·117	·120	·122	·124	·126	·128	·130	·132	·135
77	·116	·118	·120	·122	·124	·127	·129	·131	·133	·135	·137
78	·118	·120	·123	·125	·127	·129	·131	·134	·136	·138	·140
79	·121	·123	·125	·127	·130	·132	·134	·136	·139	·141	·143
80	·123	·125	·128	·130	·132	·135	·137	·139	·142	·144	·146
81	·125	·128	·130	·133	·135	·138	·140	·142	·145	·147	·149
82	·128	·130	·133	·135	·138	·140	·142	·145	·147	·150	·152
83	·130	·133	·135	·138	·140	·143	·145	·148	·150	·153	·155
84	·133	·135	·138	·140	·143	·145	·148	·150	·153	·155	·158
85	·135	·138	·140	·143	·146	·148	·151	·153	·156	·158	·161
86	·138	·140	·143	·146	·148	·151	·153	·156	·159	·161	·164
87	·140	·143	·146	·148	·151	·153	·156	·159	·162	·164	·167
88	·143	·145	·148	·151	·153	·156	·159	·162	·164	·167	·170
89	·145	·148	·151	·153	·156	·159	·162	·164	·167	·170	·172
90	·148	·150	·153	·156	·159	·162	·164	·167	·170	·173	·175
91	·150	·153	·156	·159	·161	·164	·167	·170	·173	·175	·178
92	·153	·155	·158	·161	·164	·167	·170	·173	·175	·178	·181
93	·155	·158	·161	·164	·167	·170	·172	·175	·178	·181	·184
94	·158	·160	·163	·166	·169	·172	·175	·178	·181	·184	·187
95	·160	·163	·166	·169	·172	·175	·178	·181	·184	·187	·190
96	·162	·165	·169	·172	·175	·178	·181	·184	·187	·190	·193
97	·165	·168	·171	·174	·177	·180	·183	·186	·190	·193	·196
98	·167	·170	·174	·177	·180	·183	·186	·189	·192	·196	·199
99	·170	·173	·176	·179	·183	·186	·189	·192	·195	·198	·202
100	·172	·175	·179	·182	·185	·188	·192	·195	·198	·201	·204

TABLE 2
TEMPERATURE CORRECTION OF THE MET. O. KEW-PATTERN BAROMETER MK 2
(Inch Scale)

To be used with barometers having National Physical Laboratory certificates dated ON OR AFTER 1st JANUARY, 1955.

The following corrections are to be subtracted from the barometer readings to reduce them to standard temperature conditions.

Attached Thermo- meter (°F)	Barometer Reading (Inches)										
	26.0	26.5	27.0	27.5	28.0	28.5	29.0	29.5	30.0	30.5	31.0
40	·020	·020	·021	·021	·021	·022	·022	·022	·023	·023	·024
41	·022	·023	·023	·024	·024	·024	·025	·025	·026	·026	·026
42	·025	·025	·026	·026	·027	·027	·028	·028	·029	·029	·029
43	·027	·028	·028	·029	·029	·030	·030	·031	·031	·032	·032
44	·030	·030	·031	·031	·032	·033	·033	·034	·034	·035	·035
45	·032	·033	·034	·034	·035	·035	·036	·036	·037	·038	·038
46	·035	·035	·036	·037	·037	·038	·039	·039	·040	·041	·041
47	·037	·038	·039	·039	·040	·041	·041	·042	·043	·043	·044
48	·040	·041	·041	·042	·043	·043	·044	·045	·046	·046	·047
49	·042	·043	·044	·045	·045	·046	·047	·048	·048	·049	·050
50	·045	·046	·046	·047	·048	·049	·050	·050	·051	·052	·053
51	·047	·048	·049	·050	·051	·051	·052	·053	·054	·055	·056
52	·050	·051	·051	·052	·053	·054	·055	·056	·057	·058	·059
53	·052	·053	·054	·055	·056	·057	·058	·059	·060	·061	·062
54	·055	·056	·057	·058	·059	·060	·061	·062	·063	·064	·065
55	·057	·058	·059	·060	·061	·062	·063	·064	·065	·066	·068
56	·060	·061	·062	·063	·064	·065	·066	·067	·068	·069	·071
57	·062	·063	·064	·065	·067	·068	·069	·070	·071	·072	·074
58	·064	·066	·067	·068	·069	·070	·072	·073	·074	·075	·077
59	·067	·068	·069	·071	·072	·073	·074	·076	·077	·078	·080
60	·069	·071	·072	·073	·075	·076	·077	·078	·080	·081	·083
61	·072	·073	·075	·076	·077	·078	·080	·081	·082	·084	·086
62	·074	·076	·077	·078	·080	·081	·083	·084	·085	·087	·089
63	·077	·078	·080	·081	·082	·084	·085	·087	·088	·089	·092
64	·079	·081	·082	·084	·085	·087	·088	·090	·091	·092	·094
65	·082	·083	·085	·086	·088	·089	·091	·092	·094	·095	·097
66	·084	·086	·087	·089	·090	·092	·094	·095	·097	·098	·100
67	·087	·088	·090	·091	·093	·095	·096	·098	·099	·101	·103
68	·089	·091	·092	·094	·096	·097	·099	·101	·102	·104	·106
69	·092	·093	·095	·097	·098	·100	·102	·103	·105	·107	·108
70	·094	·096	·098	·099	·101	·103	·104	·106	·108	·110	·111
71	·097	·098	·100	·102	·104	·105	·107	·109	·111	·112	·114
72	·099	·101	·103	·105	·106	·108	·110	·112	·114	·115	·117
73	·102	·103	·105	·107	·109	·111	·113	·115	·116	·118	·120
74	·104	·106	·108	·110	·112	·114	·115	·117	·119	·121	·123
75	·106	·108	·110	·112	·114	·116	·118	·120	·122	·124	·126
76	·109	·111	·113	·115	·117	·119	·121	·123	·125	·127	·129
77	·111	·113	·115	·118	·120	·122	·124	·126	·128	·130	·132
78	·114	·116	·118	·120	·122	·124	·126	·128	·131	·133	·135
79	·116	·118	·121	·123	·125	·127	·129	·131	·133	·135	·138
80	·119	·121	·123	·125	·127	·130	·132	·134	·136	·138	·141
81	·121	·123	·126	·128	·130	·132	·135	·137	·139	·141	·143
82	·124	·126	·128	·131	·133	·135	·137	·140	·142	·144	·146
83	·126	·129	·131	·133	·135	·138	·140	·142	·145	·147	·149
84	·129	·131	·133	·136	·138	·140	·143	·145	·147	·150	·152
85	·131	·134	·136	·138	·141	·143	·145	·148	·150	·153	·155
86	·134	·136	·138	·141	·143	·146	·148	·151	·153	·156	·158
87	·136	·139	·141	·144	·146	·148	·151	·153	·156	·158	·161
88	·139	·141	·144	·146	·149	·151	·154	·156	·159	·161	·164
89	·141	·144	·146	·149	·151	·154	·156	·159	·162	·164	·167
90	·143	·146	·149	·151	·154	·157	·159	·162	·164	·167	·170

TABLE 3
CORRECTION OF MET. O. INCH BAROMETERS, MK 1, TO STANDARD GRAVITY
IN LATITUDE 45°

To be used with barometers having National Physical Laboratory certificate dated ON OR BEFORE 31st DECEMBER, 1954.

These corrections are to be subtracted for latitudes 0°-44° and added for latitudes 46°-90°.

Lat. N or S (subtract correction)	Correction		Lat. N or S (add correction)		Lat. N or S (subtract correction)	Correction		Lat. N or S (add correction)
	At 29 in.	At 31 in.				At 29 in.	At 31 in.	
°	in.	in.	°		°	in.	in.	°
22	-.055	-.058	68		45	-.000	-.000	45
21	-.056	-.060	69		44	-.002	-.002	46
20	-.058	-.062	70		43	-.005	-.005	47
19	-.060	-.064	71		42	-.008	-.008	48
18	-.062	-.066	72		41	-.010	-.011	49
17	-.063	-.067	73		40	-.013	-.014	50
16	-.065	-.069	74		39	-.015	-.016	51
15	-.066	-.070	75		38	-.018	-.019	52
14	-.067	-.072	76		37	-.021	-.022	53
13	-.068	-.073	77		36	-.023	-.025	54
12	-.070	-.074	78		35	-.026	-.027	55
11	-.071	-.075	79		34	-.028	-.030	56
10	-.072	-.076	80		33	-.031	-.033	57
9	-.072	-.077	81		32	-.033	-.035	58
8	-.073	-.078	82		31	-.036	-.038	59
7	-.074	-.079	83		30	-.038	-.040	60
6	-.075	-.080	84		29	-.040	-.043	61
5	-.075	-.080	85		28	-.042	-.045	62
4	-.075	-.080	86		27	-.045	-.048	63
3	-.075	-.080	87		26	-.047	-.050	64
2	-.075	-.080	88		25	-.049	-.052	65
1	-.075	-.080	89		24	-.051	-.054	66
0	-.076	-.081	90		23	-.053	-.056	67

TABLE 4
CORRECTION OF MET. O. INCH BAROMETERS, MK 2, TO STANDARD GRAVITY,
i.e. 980.665 cm/sec²

To be used with barometers having National Physical Laboratory certificate dated ON OR AFTER 1st JANUARY, 1955.

Lat. N or S	Correction		Lat. N or S	Correction		Lat. N or S	Correction		Lat. N or S	Correction	
	At 29 in.	At 31 in.		At 29 in.	At 31 in.		At 29 in.	At 31 in.		At 29 in.	At 31 in.
°	in.	in.	°	in.	in.	°	in.	in.	°	in.	in.
0	-.078	-.083	25	-.051	-.054	46	+.001	+.001	67	+.052	+.055
5	-.077	-.082	26	-.048	-.052	47	-.004	-.004	68	-.054	-.057
6	-.076	-.081	27	-.046	-.050	48	-.007	-.007	69	-.055	-.059
7	-.075	-.081	28	-.044	-.047	49	-.009	-.010	70	-.057	-.061
8	-.075	-.080	29	-.042	-.045	50	-.012	-.013	71	-.059	-.063
9	-.074	-.079	30	-.040	-.042	51	-.014	-.015	72	-.061	-.065
10	-.073	-.078	31	-.037	-.040	52	-.017	-.018	73	-.062	-.066
11	-.072	-.077	32	-.035	-.037	53	-.020	-.021	74	-.064	-.068
12	-.071	-.076	33	-.033	-.035	54	-.022	-.024	75	-.065	-.069
13	-.070	-.075	34	-.030	-.032	55	-.025	-.026	76	-.066	-.071
14	-.069	-.074	35	-.028	-.029	56	-.027	-.029	77	-.067	-.072
15	-.068	-.072	36	-.025	-.027	57	-.030	-.032	78	-.069	-.073
16	-.066	-.071	37	-.023	-.024	58	-.032	-.034	79	-.070	-.074
17	-.065	-.069	38	-.020	-.021	59	-.035	-.037	80	-.071	-.075
18	-.063	-.068	39	-.017	-.019	60	-.037	-.039	81	-.071	-.076
19	-.062	-.066	40	-.015	-.016	61	-.039	-.042	82	-.072	-.077
20	-.060	-.064	41	-.012	-.013	62	-.041	-.044	83	-.073	-.078
21	-.058	-.062	42	-.009	-.010	63	-.044	-.047	84	-.074	-.079
22	-.056	-.060	43	-.007	-.007	64	-.046	-.049	85	+.074	+.079
23	-.055	-.058	44	-.004	-.004	65	-.048	-.051			
24	-.053	-.056	45	-.001	-.002	66	+.050	+.053	90	+.075	+.080

TABLE 5

CORRECTION OF INCH BAROMETERS TO MEAN SEA LEVEL

These corrections are to be added to the barometer readings.

Height in feet	Temperature of Air (Dry Bulb in Screen), °F										Height in feet
	0°	10°	20°	30°	40°	50°	60°	70°	80°	90°	
5	·006	·006	·006	·006	·006	·006	·006	·005	·005	·005	5
10	·012	·012	·012	·011	·011	·011	·011	·010	·010	·010	10
15	·019	·018	·018	·017	·017	·017	·017	·016	·016	·015	15
20	·025	·024	·023	·023	·023	·022	·022	·021	·021	·020	20
25	·031	·030	·029	·029	·029	·028	·027	·027	·026	·026	25
30	·037	·036	·035	·035	·034	·033	·032	·032	·031	·031	30
35	·043	·042	·041	·041	·040	·039	·038	·037	·037	·036	35
40	·049	·048	·047	·046	·045	·044	·043	·042	·042	·041	40
45	·056	·054	·053	·052	·051	·050	·049	·048	·047	·046	45
50	·062	·060	·059	·058	·056	·055	·054	·053	·052	·051	50
55	·068	·066	·065	·064	·062	·061	·060	·059	·057	·056	55
60	·074	·072	·071	·069	·068	·066	·065	·064	·062	·061	60
65	·080	·078	·077	·075	·074	·072	·071	·069	·068	·066	65
70	·086	·084	·083	·081	·079	·077	·076	·074	·073	·071	70
75	·092	·090	·089	·087	·085	·083	·082	·080	·078	·076	75
80	·098	·096	·094	·092	·091	·089	·087	·085	·083	·081	80
85	·105	·102	·100	·098	·097	·095	·093	·090	·089	·087	85
90	·111	·108	·106	·104	·102	·101	·098	·095	·094	·092	90
95	·117	·114	·112	·110	·108	·106	·103	·101	·099	·097	95
100	·123	·120	·118	·115	·113	·111	·108	·106	·104	·101	100

TABLE 6

TEMPERATURE CORRECTION OF THE MET. O. KEW-PATTERN BAROMETER MK. 1

(Millibar Scale)

*To be used with barometers having National Physical Laboratory certificate dated ON OR BEFORE 31st DECEMBER, 1954.**These corrections are to be subtracted from the barometer readings when the attached thermometer is ABOVE 28.5° A_y and added when it is BELOW 28.5° A_y to reduce the barometer readings to 28.5° A.*

Attached thermo- meter (add correction)	Barometer readings (mb)										Attached thermo- meter (subtract correction)
	880	900	920	940	960	980	1000	1020	1040	1060	
284° A	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	286° A
283	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.4	0.4	287
282	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	288
281	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	289
280	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	290
279	0.9	0.9	0.9	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.1	1.1	1.1	291
278	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.3	292
277	1.2	1.2	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.5	293
276	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.6	1.6	1.6	294
275	1.5	1.5	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.7	1.7	1.7	1.8	1.8	295
274	1.7	1.7	1.7	1.8	1.8	1.9	1.9	1.9	1.9	2.0	296
273	1.8	1.9	1.9	1.9	2.0	2.0	2.1	2.1	2.1	2.2	297
272	2.0	2.0	2.1	2.1	2.1	2.2	2.2	2.3	2.3	2.3	298
271	2.1	2.2	2.2	2.3	2.3	2.3	2.4	2.4	2.5	2.5	299
270	2.3	2.3	2.4	2.4	2.5	2.5	2.6	2.6	2.7	2.7	300
269	2.4	2.5	2.5	2.6	2.6	2.7	2.7	2.8	2.8	2.9	301
268	2.6	2.6	2.7	2.7	2.8	2.9	2.9	3.0	3.0	3.1	302
267	2.7	2.8	2.8	2.9	3.0	3.0	3.1	3.1	3.2	3.3	303
266	2.9	2.9	3.0	3.1	3.1	3.2	3.3	3.3	3.4	3.4	304
265	3.0	3.1	3.2	3.2	3.3	3.3	3.4	3.5	3.5	3.6	305
264	3.2	3.3	3.3	3.4	3.5	3.5	3.6	3.7	3.7	3.8	306
263	3.3	3.4	3.5	3.5	3.6	3.7	3.8	3.8	3.9	4.0	307
262	3.5	3.6	3.6	3.7	3.8	3.9	3.9	4.0	4.1	4.2	308
261	3.6	3.7	3.8	3.9	3.9	4.0	4.1	4.2	4.3	4.3	309
260	3.8	3.9	3.9	4.0	4.1	4.2	4.3	4.4	4.4	4.5	310
259	3.9	4.0	4.1	4.2	4.3	4.4	4.5	4.5	4.6	4.7	311
258	4.1	4.2	4.3	4.3	4.4	4.5	4.6	4.7	4.8	4.9	312
257	4.2	4.3	4.4	4.5	4.6	4.7	4.8	4.9	5.0	5.1	313
256	4.4	4.5	4.6	4.7	4.8	4.9	5.0	5.1	5.1	5.2	314
255	4.5	4.6	4.7	4.8	4.9	5.0	5.1	5.2	5.3	5.4	315

TABLE 7

TEMPERATURE CORRECTION OF THE MET. O. KEW-PATTERN BAROMETER MK 2
(Millibar Scale)

To be used with barometers having National Physical Laboratory certificate dated ON OR AFTER
1st JANUARY, 1955.

These corrections are to be subtracted from the barometer readings to reduce them to 0°C.

Attached Thermometer		Barometer Readings (Millibars)						
°A	°C	920	940	960	980	1000	1020	1040
273	0	0-00	0-00	0-00	0-00	0-00	0-00	0-00
274	1	0-16	0-16	0-16	0-17	0-17	0-17	0-18
275	2	0-32	0-32	0-33	0-34	0-34	0-35	0-36
276	3	0-48	0-48	0-49	0-50	0-51	0-52	0-53
277	4	0-63	0-64	0-65	0-67	0-68	0-70	0-71
278	5	0-79	0-80	0-82	0-84	0-85	0-87	0-89
279	6	0-95	0-97	0-99	1-01	1-03	1-05	1-07
280	7	1-11	1-13	1-15	1-18	1-20	1-22	1-25
281	8	1-26	1-29	1-32	1-35	1-38	1-40	1-43
282	9	1-42	1-45	1-48	1-52	1-55	1-57	1-60
283	10	1-58	1-61	1-64	1-68	1-71	1-74	1-77
294	11	1-74	1-77	1-81	1-84	1-88	1-91	1-95
285	12	1-89	1-93	1-97	2-01	2-05	2-09	2-13
286	13	2-05	2-09	2-13	2-18	2-22	2-26	2-30
287	14	2-21	2-25	2-30	2-34	2-39	2-44	2-48
288	15	2-36	2-41	2-46	2-51	2-56	2-61	2-66
289	16	2-52	2-57	2-63	2-68	2-73	2-78	2-83
290	17	2-68	2-73	2-79	2-84	2-90	2-96	3-01
291	18	2-84	2-89	2-95	3-01	3-07	3-13	3-19
292	19	2-99	3-05	3-12	3-18	3-24	3-30	3-36
293	20	3-15	3-22	3-28	3-35	3-41	3-48	3-54
294	21	3-31	3-38	3-44	3-51	3-58	3-65	3-72
295	22	3-46	3-54	3-61	3-68	3-75	3-82	3-89
296	23	3-62	3-70	3-77	3-84	3-92	3-99	4-07
297	24	3-78	3-86	3-93	4-01	4-09	4-17	4-25
298	25	3-93	4-02	4-10	4-18	4-26	4-34	4-42
299	26	4-09	4-18	4-26	4-34	4-43	4-51	4-60
300	27	4-25	4-34	4-42	4-51	4-60	4-69	4-77
301	28	4-40	4-49	4-59	4-68	4-77	4-86	4-95
302	29	4-56	4-65	4-75	4-84	4-94	5-03	5-13
303	30	4-72	4-81	4-91	5-01	5-11	5-20	5-30
304	31	4-88	4-97	5-07	5-18	5-28	5-37	5-47
305	32	5-03	5-13	5-24	5-34	5-44	5-55	5-65
306	33	5-19	5-29	5-40	5-51	5-61	5-72	5-82
307	34	5-34	5-45	5-56	5-67	5-78	5-89	6-00
308	35	5-50	5-61	5-72	5-84	5-95	6-06	6-17
309	36	5-65	5-76	5-88	6-00	6-11	6-23	6-35
310	37	5-81	5-92	6-04	6-17	6-28	6-40	6-53
311	38	5-97	6-09	6-21	6-34	6-46	6-58	6-71
312	39	6-13	6-25	6-37	6-51	6-63	6-75	6-88
313	40	6-28	6-41	6-54	6-67	6-80	6-93	7-06

TABLE 8

CORRECTION OF MET. O. MILLIBAR BAROMETERS, MK 1, TO STANDARD GRAVITY
IN LATITUDE 45°

To be used with barometers having National Physical Laboratory certificate dated ON OR BEFORE
31st DECEMBER, 1954.

These corrections are to be subtracted for latitudes 0°-44° and added for latitudes 46°-90°.

Lat. N or S (subtract correction)	Correction		Lat. N or S (add correction)
	At 980 mb	At 1040 mb	
°	mb.	mb.	°
24	1.73	1.83	66
23	1.79	1.91	67
22	1.86	1.97	68
21	1.92	2.04	69
20	1.98	2.10	70
19	2.03	2.16	71
18	2.09	2.22	72
17	2.14	2.28	73
16	2.19	2.32	74
15	2.23	2.38	75
14	2.29	2.42	76
13	2.32	2.46	77
12	2.36	2.50	78
11	2.39	2.54	79
10	2.42	2.57	80
9	2.46	2.61	81
8	2.48	2.63	82
7	2.50	2.66	83
6	2.53	2.68	84
5	2.54	2.70	85
0	2.59	2.75	90

Lat. N or S (subtract correction)	Correction		Lat. N or S (add correction)
	At 980 mb	At 1040 mb	
°	mb.	mb.	°
45	0.00	0.00	45
44	0.09	0.09	46
43	0.18	0.19	47
42	0.27	0.29	48
41	0.36	0.38	49
40	0.45	0.47	50
39	0.54	0.57	51
38	0.63	0.67	52
37	0.71	0.75	53
36	0.80	0.85	54
35	0.89	0.94	55
34	0.97	1.03	56
33	1.05	1.11	57
32	1.13	1.20	58
31	1.21	1.29	59
30	1.29	1.37	60
29	1.37	1.45	61
28	1.44	1.53	62
27	1.52	1.61	63
26	1.59	1.69	64
25	1.66	1.76	65

TABLE 9

CORRECTION OF MET. O. MILLIBAR BAROMETERS, MK 2, TO STANDARD GRAVITY
i.e., 980.665 cm/sec²

To be used with barometers having National Physical Laboratory certificate dated ON OR AFTER
1st JANUARY, 1955.

Lat. N or S	Correction		Lat. N or S	Correction		Lat. N or S	Correction		Lat. N or S	Correction	
	At 980 mb	At 1040 mb		At 980 mb	At 1040 mb		At 980 mb	At 1040 mb		At 980 mb	At 1040 mb
°	mb.	mb.	°	mb.	mb.	°	mb.	mb.	°	mb.	mb.
0	-2.63	-2.79	25	-1.71	-1.81	46	+0.04	+0.04	67	+1.75	+1.86
5	-2.59	-2.75	26	-1.64	-1.74	47	0.13	0.14	68	1.81	1.92
6	-2.57	-2.73	27	-1.57	-1.66	48	0.22	0.23	69	1.87	1.99
7	-2.55	-2.71	28	-1.49	-1.58	49	0.31	0.33	70	1.93	2.05
8	-2.53	-2.68	29	-1.42	-1.50	50	0.40	0.42	71	1.99	2.11
9	-2.50	-2.66	30	-1.34	-1.42	51	0.49	0.52	72	2.05	2.17
10	-2.47	-2.62	31	-1.26	-1.34	52	0.58	0.61	73	2.10	2.23
11	-2.44	-2.59	32	-1.18	-1.25	53	0.66	0.70	74	2.15	2.28
12	-2.41	-2.55	33	-1.10	-1.17	54	0.75	0.80	75	2.19	2.33
13	-2.37	-2.51	34	-1.02	-1.08	55	0.84	0.89	76	2.24	2.37
14	-2.33	-2.47	35	-0.93	-0.99	56	0.92	0.98	77	2.28	2.42
15	-2.28	-2.42	36	-0.85	-0.90	57	1.00	1.06	78	2.32	2.46
16	-2.24	-2.37	37	-0.76	-0.81	58	1.09	1.15	79	2.35	2.50
17	-2.19	-2.32	38	-0.67	-0.72	59	1.17	1.24	80	2.38	2.53
18	-2.14	-2.27	39	-0.59	-0.62	60	1.24	1.32	81	2.41	2.56
19	-2.08	-2.21	40	-0.50	-0.53	61	1.32	1.40	82	2.44	2.59
20	-2.03	-2.15	41	-0.41	-0.43	62	1.40	1.48	83	2.46	2.62
21	-1.97	-2.09	42	-0.32	-0.34	63	1.47	1.56	84	2.48	2.64
22	-1.91	-2.02	43	-0.23	-0.24	64	1.54	1.64	85	+2.50	+2.66
23	-1.84	-1.95	44	-0.14	-0.15	65	1.61	1.71			
24	-1.78	-1.88	45	-0.05	-0.05	66	+1.68	+1.79	90	+2.54	+2.70

TABLE 10A

CORRECTION OF MILLIBAR BAROMETERS TO MEAN SEA LEVEL

These corrections are to be added to the barometer readings.

Height in feet	Air Temperature (dry bulb in screen), °F										Height in feet
	0°	10°	10°	30°	40°	50°	60°	70°	80°	90°	
5	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	5
10	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.3	0.3	10
15	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	15
20	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	20
25	1.0	1.0	1.0	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	25
30	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.0	1.0	30
35	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	35
40	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	40
45	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.7	1.7	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	45
50	2.0	2.0	2.0	1.9	1.9	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.7	1.7	50
55	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.1	2.1	2.0	2.0	1.9	1.9	1.9	55
60	2.4	2.4	2.4	2.3	2.3	2.2	2.2	2.1	2.1	2.0	60
65	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.5	2.5	2.4	2.4	2.3	2.3	2.2	65
70	2.8	2.8	2.8	2.7	2.7	2.6	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.4	70
75	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.9	2.8	2.8	2.7	2.7	2.6	2.5	75
80	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.0	3.0	2.9	2.9	2.8	2.8	2.7	80
85	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.2	3.1	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.9	85
90	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.2	3.1	3.1	90
95	3.9	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.4	3.3	3.3	95
100	4.1	4.0	3.9	3.8	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.5	3.4	100

TABLE 10B

CORRECTION OF MILLIBAR BAROMETERS TO MEAN SEA LEVEL

These corrections are to be added to the barometer readings

Height in feet	Air Temperature (dry bulb in screen), °C										Height in feet
	-15°	-10°	-5°	0°	5°	10°	15°	20°	25°	30°	
5	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	5
10	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.3	0.3	10
15	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	15
20	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	20
25	1.0	1.0	1.0	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	25
30	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.0	1.0	30
35	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	35
40	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.4	40
45	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.7	1.7	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	45
50	2.0	2.0	1.9	1.9	1.9	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.7	1.7	50
55	2.2	2.2	2.1	2.1	2.1	2.0	2.0	1.9	1.9	1.9	55
60	2.4	2.4	2.3	2.3	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.1	2.1	2.1	60
65	2.6	2.6	2.5	2.5	2.4	2.4	2.4	2.3	2.3	2.2	65
70	2.8	2.8	2.7	2.7	2.6	2.6	2.5	2.5	2.4	2.4	70
75	3.0	3.0	2.9	2.9	2.8	2.8	2.7	2.7	2.6	2.6	75
80	3.2	3.2	3.1	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.9	2.8	2.8	2.7	80
85	3.4	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.2	3.1	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.9	85
90	3.6	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.4	3.3	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.1	90
95	3.8	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.4	3.3	3.3	95
100	4.0	4.0	3.9	3.8	3.7	3.7	3.6	3.6	3.5	3.4	100

TABLE 11

APPROXIMATE BAROMETER CORRECTIONS FOR TEMPERATURE AND HEIGHT

	Inches	Millibars*
Temperature ...	—·003 inch for each degree F the attached thermometer reads above freezing point.	Subtract the temperature of the attached thermometer, in degrees A, from 285°A (taking account of sign), and divide by 6, to get the correction in millibars.
Height ...	The height in feet, increased by 10 per cent, gives the correction in thousandths of an inch.	The height in feet, increased by 10 per cent, and divided by 30, gives the correction in millibars.

Examples:

Inch barometer,	attached thermometer 56°F	Temperature correction —·072 in.
height	90 feet	Height „ +·099 „
Millibar barometer	(N.P.L. certificate before 1st January, 1955):	
attached thermometer 299°A	Temperature „	—2·3 mb
height	90 feet	Height „ +3·3 „

*In the case of barometers with N.P.L. certificate dated on or after 1st January, 1955, the temperature of the attached thermometer should be subtracted from 273°A or, if the thermometer is graduated in °C, from 0°C.

THE DIURNAL VARIATION OF BAROMETRIC PRESSURE IN THE ZONES OF LATITUDE 0°-10° AND 10°-20°, N OR S

TABLE 12

CORRECTION TO BE APPLIED TO THE
OBSERVED PRESSURE FOR DIURNAL
VARIATION

Local Time	0°-10° N or S		10°-20° N or S	
	mb	inches	mb	inches
0	-0.6	-0.18	-0.5	-0.15
1	-0.1	-0.03	-0.1	-0.03
2	+0.3	+0.09	+0.3	+0.09
3	+0.7	+0.21	+0.7	+0.21
4	+0.8	+0.24	+0.8	+0.24
5	+0.6	+0.18	+0.6	+0.18
6	+0.2	+0.06	+0.2	+0.06
7	-0.4	-0.12	-0.3	-0.09
8	-0.9	-0.27	-0.8	-0.24
9	-1.3	-0.38	-1.1	-0.32
10	-1.4	-0.41	-1.2	-0.35
11	-1.1	-0.32	-1.0	-0.30
12	-0.6	-0.18	-0.5	-0.15
13	+0.1	+0.03	+0.1	+0.03
14	+0.7	+0.21	+0.7	+0.21
15	+1.3	+0.38	+1.1	+0.32
16	+1.5	+0.44	+1.3	+0.38
17	+1.4	+0.41	+1.2	+0.35
18	+1.0	+0.30	+0.9	+0.27
19	+0.5	+0.15	+0.3	+0.09
20	-0.1	-0.03	-0.2	-0.06
21	-0.6	-0.18	-0.6	-0.18
22	-0.9	-0.27	-0.8	-0.24
23	-0.9	-0.27	-0.8	-0.24
24	-0.6	-0.18	-0.5	-0.15

TABLE 13

AVERAGE VALUES OF THE BAROMETRIC
CHANGE IN AN HOUR, DUE TO THE
DIURNAL VARIATION

Local Time	0°-10° N or S		10°-20° N or S	
	mb	inches	mb	inches
0-1	-0.5	-0.15	-0.4	-0.12
1-2	-0.4	-0.12	-0.4	-0.12
2-3	-0.4	-0.12	-0.4	-0.12
3-4	-0.1	-0.03	-0.1	-0.03
4-5	+0.2	+0.06	+0.2	+0.06
5-6	+0.4	+0.12	+0.4	+0.12
6-7	+0.6	+0.18	+0.5	+0.15
7-8	+0.5	+0.15	+0.5	+0.15
8-9	+0.4	+0.12	+0.3	+0.09
9-10	+0.1	+0.03	+0.1	+0.03
10-11	-0.3	-0.09	-0.2	-0.06
11-12	-0.5	-0.15	-0.5	-0.15
12-13	-0.7	-0.21	-0.6	-0.18
13-14	-0.6	-0.18	-0.6	-0.18
14-15	-0.6	-0.18	-0.4	-0.12
15-16	-0.2	-0.06	-0.2	-0.06
16-17	+0.1	+0.03	+0.1	+0.03
17-18	+0.4	+0.12	+0.3	+0.09
18-19	+0.5	+0.15	+0.6	+0.18
19-20	+0.6	+0.18	+0.5	+0.15
20-21	+0.5	+0.15	+0.4	+0.12
21-22	+0.3	+0.09	+0.2	+0.06
22-23	0	.000	0	.000
23-24	-0.3	-0.09	-0.3	-0.09

These tables are based on observations made in British ships, at the hours 0000, 0400, 0800, 1200, 1600, 2000 local time, between 1919-38.

In the tropics, should the barometer, after correction for diurnal variation (Table 12) be as much as 3 millibars (approximately 0.1 inch) below the monthly normal for the locality, as shown on meteorological charts, the mariner should be on the alert, as there is a distinct possibility that a tropical storm has formed, or is forming. A comparison of subsequent hourly changes in his barometer with the corresponding figures in Table 13 will show whether these changes indicate a real further fall in pressure and, if so, its amount.

Caution: When entering a barometric pressure in the log, or when including it in a wireless weather report, the correction for diurnal variation must not be applied.

TABLE 14

EQUIVALENTS IN MILLIBARS OF INCHES OF MERCURY AT 0°C (32°F) AND STANDARD GRAVITY 980.665 CM/SEC.²
(Hundredths of an inch)

Inches	Millibars									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
27.0	914.3	914.7	915.0	915.3	915.7	916.0	916.4	916.7	917.0	917.4
27.1	917.7	918.1	918.4	918.7	919.1	919.4	919.7	920.1	920.4	920.8
27.2	921.1	921.4	921.8	922.1	922.5	922.8	923.1	923.5	923.8	924.1
27.3	924.5	924.8	925.2	925.5	925.8	926.2	926.5	926.9	927.2	927.5
27.4	927.9	928.2	928.5	928.9	929.2	929.6	929.9	930.2	930.6	930.9
27.5	931.3	931.6	931.9	932.3	932.6	933.0	933.3	933.6	934.0	934.3
27.6	934.6	935.0	935.3	935.7	936.0	936.3	936.7	937.0	937.4	937.7
27.7	938.0	938.4	938.7	939.0	939.4	939.7	940.1	940.4	940.7	941.1
27.8	941.4	941.8	942.1	942.4	942.8	943.1	943.4	943.8	944.1	944.5
27.9	944.8	945.1	945.5	945.8	946.2	946.5	946.8	947.2	947.5	947.9
28.0	948.2	948.5	948.9	949.2	949.5	949.9	950.2	950.6	950.9	951.2
28.1	951.6	951.9	952.3	952.6	952.9	953.3	953.6	953.9	954.3	954.6
28.2	955.0	955.3	955.6	956.0	956.3	956.7	957.0	957.3	957.7	958.0
28.3	958.3	958.7	959.0	959.4	959.7	960.0	960.4	960.7	961.1	961.4
28.4	961.7	962.1	962.4	962.8	963.1	963.4	963.8	964.1	964.4	964.8
28.5	965.1	965.5	965.8	966.1	966.5	966.8	967.2	967.5	967.8	968.2
28.6	968.5	968.8	969.2	969.5	969.9	970.2	970.5	970.9	971.2	971.6
28.7	971.9	972.2	972.6	972.9	973.2	973.6	973.9	974.3	974.6	974.9
28.8	975.3	975.6	976.0	976.3	976.6	977.0	977.3	977.7	978.0	978.3
28.9	978.7	979.0	979.3	979.7	980.0	980.4	980.7	981.0	981.4	981.7
29.0	982.1	982.4	982.7	983.1	983.4	983.7	984.1	984.4	984.8	985.1
29.1	985.4	985.8	986.1	986.5	986.8	987.1	987.5	987.8	988.1	988.5
29.2	988.8	989.2	989.5	989.8	990.2	990.5	990.9	991.2	991.5	991.9
29.3	992.2	992.6	992.9	993.2	993.6	993.9	994.2	994.6	994.9	995.3
29.4	995.6	995.9	996.3	996.6	997.0	997.3	997.6	998.0	998.3	998.6

TABLE 14—(contd.)

Inches	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	Millibars									
29.5	999.0	999.3	999.7	1000.0	1000.3	1000.7	1001.0	1001.4	1001.7	1002.0
29.6	1002.4	1002.7	1003.0	1003.4	1003.7	1004.1	1004.4	1004.7	1005.1	1005.4
29.7	1005.8	1006.1	1006.4	1006.8	1007.1	1007.5	1007.8	1008.1	1008.5	1008.8
29.8	1009.1	1009.5	1009.8	1010.2	1010.5	1010.8	1011.2	1011.5	1011.9	1012.2
29.9	1012.5	1012.9	1013.2	1013.5	1013.9	1014.2	1014.6	1014.9	1015.2	1015.6
30.0	1015.9	1016.3	1016.6	1016.9	1017.3	1017.6	1017.9	1018.3	1018.6	1019.0
30.1	1019.3	1019.6	1020.0	1020.3	1020.7	1021.0	1021.3	1021.7	1022.0	1022.4
30.2	1022.7	1023.0	1023.4	1023.7	1024.0	1024.4	1024.7	1025.1	1025.4	1025.7
30.3	1026.1	1026.4	1026.8	1027.1	1027.4	1027.8	1028.1	1028.4	1028.8	1029.1
30.4	1029.5	1029.8	1030.1	1030.5	1030.8	1031.2	1031.5	1031.8	1032.2	1032.5
30.5	1032.8	1033.2	1033.5	1033.9	1034.2	1034.5	1034.9	1035.2	1035.6	1035.9
30.6	1036.2	1036.6	1036.9	1037.3	1037.6	1037.9	1038.3	1038.6	1038.9	1039.3
30.7	1039.6	1040.0	1040.3	1040.6	1041.0	1041.3	1041.7	1042.0	1042.3	1042.7
30.8	1043.0	1043.3	1043.7	1044.0	1044.4	1044.7	1045.0	1045.4	1045.7	1046.1
30.9	1046.4	1046.7	1047.1	1047.4	1047.7	1048.1	1048.4	1048.8	1049.1	1049.4

To reduce millimeters of pressure to millibars, increase the number of millimetres by one third.

Example 764.8 millimetres
 add 254.9

1019.7 millibars

Thousandths of an Inch		
Inch	Millibar	Millibar
.001	.0	.2
.002	.1	.2
.003	.1	.3
.004	.1	.3
.005	.2	

TABLE 15
DEW-POINT (°C)
(FOR USE WITH MARINE SCREEN)

Dry Bulb	Depression of Wet Bulb																			Dry Bulb						
	0°	0.2°	0.4°	0.6°	0.8°	1.0°	1.2°	1.4°	1.6°	1.8°	2.0°	2.5°	3.0°	3.5°	4.0°	4.5°	5.0°	5.5°	6.0°		6.5°	7.0°	7.5°	8.0°	8.5°	9.0°
40	40	40	40	39	38	38	38	38	38	38	38	37	36	35	34	34	34	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	40
39	39	39	39	38	37	37	37	37	37	37	37	36	35	34	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	39
38	38	38	38	37	36	36	36	36	36	36	36	35	34	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	38
37	37	37	37	36	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	34	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	37
36	36	36	36	35	34	34	34	34	34	34	34	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	36
35	35	35	35	34	33	33	33	33	33	33	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	35
34	34	34	34	33	32	32	32	32	32	32	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	34
33	33	33	33	32	31	31	31	31	31	31	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	33
32	32	32	32	31	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	32
31	31	31	31	30	29	29	29	29	29	29	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	31
30	30	30	30	29	28	28	28	28	28	28	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	30
29	29	29	29	28	27	27	27	27	27	27	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	29
28	28	28	28	27	26	26	26	26	26	26	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	28
27	27	27	27	26	25	25	25	25	25	25	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	27
26	26	26	26	25	24	24	24	24	24	24	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	26
25	25	25	25	24	23	23	23	23	23	23	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	25
24	24	24	24	23	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	24
23	23	23	23	22	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	23
22	22	22	22	21	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	22
21	21	21	21	20	19	19	19	19	19	19	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	21
20	20	20	20	19	18	18	18	18	18	18	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	20
19	19	19	19	18	17	17	17	17	17	17	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	19
18	18	18	18	17	16	16	16	16	16	16	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	18
17	17	17	17	16	15	15	15	15	15	15	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	17
16	16	16	16	15	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	16
15	15	15	15	14	13	13	13	13	13	13	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	15
14	14	14	14	13	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	14
13	13	13	13	12	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	13
12	12	12	12	11	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	12
11	11	11	11	10	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	11
10	10	10	10	9	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	10

TABLE 15—(contd.)

Dry Bulb °C	Depression of Wet Bulb																			Dry Bulb °C		
	0°	0.2°	0.4°	0.6°	0.8°	1.0°	1.2°	1.4°	1.6°	1.8°	2.0°	2.5°	3.0°	3.5°	4.0°	4.5°	5.0°	5.5°	6.0°		6.5°	7.0°
9	9	8	8	8	7	7	6	6	5	5	4	3	2	0	-1	-3	-5	-8	-10	-14	-18	
8	8	7	7	7	6	6	5	5	4	4	3	2	1	-1	-3	-5	-7	-10	-13	-17		
7	7	6	6	6	5	5	4	4	3	3	2	1	0	-2	-4	-6	-9	-12	-16			
6	6	5	5	5	4	4	3	3	2	2	1	0	-1	-3	-5	-8	-11	-15				
5	5	4	4	4	3	3	2	2	1	1	0	0	-2	-4	-6	-10	-14	-18				
4	4	3	3	3	2	2	1	1	0	0	0	-3	-5	-7	-10	-14	-18					
3	3	2	2	2	1	1	0	0	-1	-2	-3	-5	-7	-8	-11	-14	-17					
2	2	1	1	1	0	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-8	-10	-13	-16							
1	1	0	0	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7	-10	-12	-15	-19							
0	0	-1	-1	-2	-2	-3	-4	-4	-5	-6	-7	-10	-11	-14	-18							
1	1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7	-8	-9	-10	-11	-13	-17									
2	2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7	-8	-9	-10	-11	-12	-14	-18									
3	3	-4	-5	-6	-7	-8	-9	-10	-11	-12	-13	-16										
4	4	-5	-6	-7	-8	-9	-10	-11	-12	-13	-14	-18										
5	5	-6	-7	-8	-9	-10	-11	-12	-13	-14	-15	-19										
6	6	-7	-8	-9	-10	-11	-12	-13	-14	-15	-16	-20										
7	7	-8	-9	-10	-11	-12	-13	-14	-15	-16	-17	-21										
8	8	-9	-10	-11	-12	-13	-14	-15	-16	-17	-18	-22										
9	9	-10	-11	-12	-13	-14	-15	-16	-17	-18	-19	-23										
10	10	-11	-12	-13	-14	-15	-16	-17	-18	-19	-20	-24										
11	11	-12	-13	-14	-15	-16	-17	-18				-25										
12	12	-13	-14	-15	-16	-17	-18					-26										
13	13	-14	-15	-16	-17	-18						-27										
14	14	-15	-16	-17	-18							-28										
15	15	-16	-17	-18								-29										
16	16	-17	-18									-30										
17	17	-18										-31										
18	18	-19										-32										
19	19	-20										-33										

In the tables, lines are ruled to draw attention to the fact that above the line evaporation is going on from a water surface, while below the line it is going on from an ice surface. Owing to this interpolation must not be made between figures on different sides of the lines.

For dry bulb temperatures below 0°C (32°F) it will be noticed that, when the depression of the wet bulb is zero, i.e., when the temperature of the wet bulb is equal to that of the dry bulb, the dew-point is still below the dry bulb, and the relative humidity is less than 100 per cent. These apparent anomalies are a consequence of the method of computing dew-points and relative humidities now adopted by the Meteorological Office, in which the standard saturation pressure for temperatures below 0°C (32°F) is taken as that over water, and not as that over ice.

TABLE 16
DEW-POINT (°C)
(FOR USE WITH ASPIRATED PSYCHROMETER)

Dry Bulb °C	Depression of Wet Bulb																	Dry Bulb °C			
	0°	0.5°	1.0°	1.5°	2.0°	2.5°	3.0°	3.5°	4.0°	4.5°	5.0°	5.5°	6.0°	6.5°	7.0°	7.5°	8.0°		8.5°	9.0°	
40	39	38	37	36	35	34	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	40
39	38	37	36	35	34	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	39
38	37	36	35	34	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	38
37	36	35	34	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	37
36	35	34	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	36
35	34	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	35
34	33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	34
33	32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	33
32	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	32
31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	31
30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	30
29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	29
28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	28
27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	27
26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	26
25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	25
24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	24
23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	23
22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	22
21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	21
20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	20
19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	19
18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	18
17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	17
16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	16
15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	15
14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	14
13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7	13
12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7	-8	12
11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7	-8	-9	11
10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7	-8	-9	-10	10

TABLE 16—(contd.)

Dry Bulb °C	Depression of Wet Bulb																			Dry Bulb °C
	0°	0.5°	1.0°	1.5°	2.0°	2.5°	3.0°	3.5°	4.0°	4.5°	5.0°	5.5°	6.0°	6.5°	7.0°	7.5°	8.0°	8.5°	9.0°	
9	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	1	0	-2	-3	-5	-7	-9	-12	-16	-20	-27	-45	
8	8	7	6	5	4	3	1	0	-2	-3	-5	-7	-9	-12	-15	-19	-25	-32	-36	
7	7	6	5	4	3	1	0	-1	-3	-5	-7	-9	-11	-14	-18	-24	-31	-34		
6	6	5	4	3	1	0	-1	-3	-4	-6	-8	-11	-14	-18	-23	-30	-32			
5	5	4	3	2	0	-1	-3	-4	-6	-8	-10	-11	-14	-18	-22	-30				
4	4	3	2	0	-1	-2	-4	-5	-6	-8	-9	-11	-14	-17	-22	-28	-45			
3	3	2	1	-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-8	-11	-13	-16	-21	-27	-39				
2	2	1	0	-2	-3	-4	-6	-8	-10	-12	-15	-19	-24	-31	-34					
1	1	0	-2	-3	-4	-6	-8	-10	-12	-15	-19	-24	-31	-44						
0	0	-1	-3	-4	-6	-8	-9	-12	-14	-18	-22	-29	-44							
1	1	2	4	5	7	9	11	14	17	21	26	37								
2	2	4	6	8	10	12	15	18	23	29	36									
3	3	5	8	11	14	17	21	25	31	39										
4	4	7	11	15	19	23	28	34	41											
5	5	9	14	19	24	30	37	45												
6	6	12	18	24	31	39	48													
7	7	16	23	31	40	50														
8	8	21	30	40	51															
9	9	27	38	50																
10	10	35	48	63																
11	11	45	60	79																
12	12	57	75	98																
13	13	72	93	121																
14	14	90	115	148																
15	15	112	142	181																
16	16	139	175	221																
17	17	172	215	268																

See footnotes to Table 15 (page 137)

TABLE 17
DEW-POINT (°F)
(FOR USE WITH MARINE SCREEN)

Dry Bulb °F	Depression of Wet Bulb																						Dry Bulb °F
	0	0.5	1	1.5	2	2.5	3	3.5	4	4.5	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	
100	100	99	99	99	98	97	96	95	95	95	94	92	91	90	88	87	86	84	83	81	80	78	100
99	99	99	98	97	97	96	95	95	94	93	92	91	90	89	87	86	84	83	81	80	78	77	99
98	98	97	97	96	95	95	94	94	93	92	91	90	89	88	86	85	83	82	80	79	77	76	98
97	97	96	96	95	94	94	93	92	91	90	89	88	87	85	84	82	81	79	78	76	74	73	97
96	96	95	95	94	93	92	91	90	89	88	87	86	85	83	82	80	79	77	76	74	73	72	96
95	95	94	94	93	92	91	90	89	88	87	86	85	84	82	81	80	78	77	75	74	72	71	95
94	94	93	93	92	91	90	89	88	87	86	85	84	83	81	80	78	77	75	74	72	71	70	94
93	93	92	92	91	90	89	88	87	86	85	84	83	81	80	78	77	75	74	72	70	69	68	93
92	92	91	91	90	89	88	87	86	85	84	83	81	80	78	77	75	74	72	70	68	67	66	92
91	91	90	90	89	88	87	86	85	84	83	81	80	78	77	75	74	72	70	68	67	66	65	91
90	90	89	89	88	87	86	85	84	83	82	80	79	77	76	74	73	71	69	68	66	65	64	90
89	89	88	88	87	86	85	85	84	83	82	81	80	78	77	75	74	72	70	68	66	64	63	89
88	88	87	87	86	85	84	83	82	81	80	79	77	76	74	73	71	69	67	65	63	62	61	88
87	87	86	86	85	84	83	82	81	80	79	78	76	75	73	72	70	68	66	64	62	61	60	87
86	86	85	85	84	83	82	81	80	79	78	77	75	74	72	71	69	67	65	63	61	59	58	86
85	85	84	84	83	82	81	80	79	78	77	76	74	73	71	70	68	66	64	62	60	58	57	85
84	84	83	83	82	81	80	79	78	77	76	75	73	72	70	69	67	65	63	61	59	57	56	84
83	83	82	82	81	80	79	78	77	76	75	74	72	71	69	68	66	64	62	60	58	56	55	83
82	82	81	81	80	79	78	77	76	75	74	73	71	70	68	67	65	63	61	59	57	55	54	82
81	81	80	80	79	78	77	76	75	74	73	72	70	69	67	66	64	62	60	58	56	54	53	81
80	80	79	79	78	77	76	75	74	73	72	71	69	68	66	64	62	60	58	56	54	52	51	80
79	79	78	78	77	76	75	75	74	73	72	71	70	68	67	65	63	61	59	57	55	53	52	79
78	78	77	77	76	75	74	73	72	71	70	69	67	66	64	62	60	58	56	54	52	49	48	78
77	77	76	76	75	74	73	72	71	70	69	68	66	65	63	61	59	57	55	52	50	48	47	77
76	76	75	75	74	73	72	71	70	69	68	67	65	64	62	60	58	56	54	52	50	47	44	76
75	75	74	74	73	72	71	70	69	68	67	66	64	63	61	59	57	55	53	50	48	45	43	75
74	74	73	73	72	71	70	69	68	67	66	65	63	62	60	58	56	54	52	49	47	44	41	74
73	73	72	72	71	70	69	68	67	66	65	64	62	61	59	57	55	52	50	48	45	42	39	73
72	72	71	71	70	69	68	67	66	65	64	63	61	60	58	56	54	52	49	46	43	41	38	72
71	71	70	69	69	68	67	66	65	64	63	62	60	59	57	55	53	51	49	46	43	41	38	71
70	70	69	68	68	67	66	65	64	63	62	61	59	58	56	54	52	50	47	45	42	39	36	70
69	69	68	67	67	66	65	64	63	62	61	60	58	57	55	53	51	48	46	43	40	38	34	69
68	68	67	66	66	65	64	63	62	61	60	59	57	56	54	52	49	47	44	42	39	36	32	68
67	67	66	65	65	64	63	62	61	60	59	58	57	56	54	52	49	47	44	41	38	34	30	67
66	66	65	64	64	63	62	61	60	59	58	57	55	54	52	50	47	44	41	38	35	32	28	66
65	65	64	63	63	62	61	60	59	58	57	56	54	53	51	49	46	43	40	37	34	30	26	65
64	64	63	62	62	61	60	59	58	57	56	55	53	52	50	48	45	42	39	36	33	28	23	64
63	63	62	61	61	60	59	58	57	56	55	54	52	51	49	46	43	40	37	34	30	26	21	63
62	62	61	60	59	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	50	49	46	43	40	37	34	30	26	21	16	62
61	61	60	59	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	51	49	48	46	44	41	38	35	31	28	23	18	61
60	60	59	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	51	50	48	46	44	41	38	35	32	28	23	19	13	60
59	59	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	51	50	49	47	45	42	40	37	34	30	26	22	16	9	59
58	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	51	50	49	48	46	44	41	38	35	32	28	24	19	13	5	58
57	57	56	55	54	53	52	51	50	49	48	47	45	43	40	37	34	30	26	22	16	10	1	57
56	56	55	54	53	52	51	50	49	48	47	46	44	42	39	36	33	29	25	20	14	7		56
55	55	54	53	52	51	50	49	48	47	46	45	43	41	38	35	32	29	25	20	14	7		55
54	54	53	52	51	50	49	48	47	46	45	44	42	40	37	34	31	27	23	18	12	4		54
53	53	52	51	50	49	48	47	46	45	44	43	41	39	36	33	29	25	20	16	9	0		53
52	52	51	50	49	48	47	46	45	44	43	42	40	38	35	32	29	25	20	16	9	0		52
51	51	50	49	48	47	46	45	44	43	42	41	39	37	34	31	27	23	19	13	6			51
50	50	49	48	47	46	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	36	33	29	25	21	16	10	2			50
49	49	48	47	46	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	38	36	33	30	26	22	17	12	7			49
48	48	47	46	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	38	36	35	32	28	24	20	15	9	0			48
47	47	46	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	38	36	35	34	30	27	23	19	13	6				47
46	46	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	38	36	35	34	32	29	25	21	16	10	3				46
45	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	38	37	35	34	32	31	28	23	19	15	8					45
44	44	43	42	41	39	38	37	36	34	33	31	29	26	22	17	12	4						44
43	43	42	41	39	38	37	36	34	33	31	29	26	22	17	12	4							43
42	42	41	40	38	37	36	34	33	32	30	28	25	20	16	9	3							42
41	41	40	39	37	36	35	33	32	30	29	27	23	18	13	7	3							41
40	40	39	38	36	35	34	32	31	29	27	26	22	17	11	8	1							40

TABLE 17—(contd.)

Dry Bulb	Depression of Wet Bulb																							Dry Bulb
°F	0	0.5	1	1.5	2	2.5	3	3.5	4	4.5	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	°F	
39	39	38	36	35	34	32	31	29	28	26	24	20	15	12	6									39
38	38	37	35	34	33	31	30	28	26	24	22	18	15	10	3									38
37	37	36	34	33	32	30	29	27	25	23	21	18	13	7										37
36	36	35	33	32	30	29	27	25	23	23	21	16	11	5										36
35	35	34	32	31	29	28	26	25	23	21	19	14	9	3										35
34	34	33	31	30	28	27	25	23	22	20	17	13	7											34
33	33	32	30	29	27	26	24	22	20	18	16	11	4											33
32	32	31	29	28	26	24	22	21	19	16	14	8	1											32
31	31	29	28	27	25	23	21	19	17	14	12	6												31
30	30	29	27	25	23	22	20	17	15	13	10	4												30
29	29	27	26	24	22	20	18	16	14	11	8	1												
28	28	26	24	22	20	18	16	14	12	9	6													
27	27	25	23	21	19	17	15	13	10	7	4													
26	25	23	22	20	18	16	14	11	8	5	2													
25	24	22	21	19	17	14	12	10	7	3														
24	23	21	19	17	15	13	11	8	5	1														
23	22	20	18	16	14	12	9	6	3															
22	21	19	17	15	13	10	7	4	1															
21	20	18	16	13	11	9	6	2																
20	19	16	14	12	10	7	4	0																
19	17	15	13	11	8	5	2																	
18	16	14	12	10	7	4	0																	
17	15	13	11	8	5	2																		
16	14	12	10	7	4																			
15	13	11	8	5	2																			
14	12	10	7	4	1																			
13	11	8	6	3																				
12	10	7	4	1																				
11	9	6	3																					
10	7	5	2																					
9	6	3	0																					
8	5	2																						
7	4	1																						
6	3	0																						
5	2																							
4	1																							

See footnotes to Table 15 (page 137).

TABLE 18
DEW-POINT (°F)
(FOR USE WITH ASPIRATED PSYCHROMETER)

Dry Bulb	Depression of Wet Bulb																
	0°	1°	2°	3°	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°	9°	10°	11°	12°	13°	14°	15°	16°
100	100	99	98	96	95	94	93	91	90	89	87	86	85	83	82	81	79
98	98	97	96	94	93	92	91	89	88	87	85	84	83	81	80	78	77
96	96	95	94	92	91	90	89	87	86	85	83	82	80	79	77	76	74
94	94	93	92	90	89	88	86	85	84	82	81	80	78	77	75	74	72
92	92	91	89	88	87	86	84	83	82	80	79	77	76	74	73	71	70
90	90	89	87	86	85	84	82	81	79	78	77	75	74	72	71	69	67
88	88	87	85	84	83	81	80	79	77	76	74	73	71	70	68	67	65
86	86	85	83	82	81	79	78	77	75	74	72	71	69	67	66	64	62
84	84	83	81	80	79	77	76	74	73	71	70	68	67	65	63	61	60
82	82	81	79	78	77	75	74	72	71	69	68	66	64	63	61	59	57
80	80	79	77	76	75	73	72	70	69	67	65	64	62	60	58	56	54
78	78	77	75	74	72	71	69	68	66	65	63	61	60	58	56	54	52
76	76	75	73	72	70	69	67	66	64	62	61	59	57	55	53	51	49
74	74	73	71	70	68	67	65	64	62	60	58	57	55	53	50	48	46
72	72	71	69	68	66	65	63	61	60	58	56	54	52	50	48	45	43
70	70	69	67	66	64	62	61	59	57	55	54	51	49	47	45	42	40
68	68	67	65	63	62	60	59	57	55	53	51	49	47	44	42	39	36
66	66	64	63	61	60	58	56	54	53	51	49	46	44	42	39	36	33
64	64	62	61	59	58	56	54	52	50	48	46	44	41	39	36	33	29
62	62	60	59	57	55	54	52	50	48	46	43	41	38	35	32	29	25
60	60	58	57	55	53	51	49	47	45	43	41	38	35	32	29	25	21
58	58	56	55	53	51	49	47	45	43	40	38	35	32	29	25	21	16
56	56	54	53	51	49	47	45	42	40	38	35	32	29	25	21	16	11
54	54	52	50	49	47	45	42	40	37	35	32	29	25	21	17	11	4
52	52	50	48	46	44	42	40	37	35	32	29	25	21	17	11	5	

TABLE 18—(contd.)

Dry Bulb	Depression of Wet Bulb																
	0°	1°	2°	3°	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°	9°	10°	11°	12°	13°	14°	15°	16°
50	48	46	44	44	42	40	37	35	32	29	26	22	17	12	6		
48	46	44	42	40	37	35	32	29	26	22	18	13	7				
46	44	42	40	37	35	32	30	26	23	19	14	9	2	0			
44	42	40	38	35	33	30	27	23	19	15	10	8	2				
42	40	38	35	33	30	27	24	20	16	14	9	2					
40	38	35	33	31	28	25	21	19	15	9	4						
38	36	33	31	28	25	23	19	15	10	5							
36	34	31	28	26	23	20	16	11	6								
34	32	29	26	23	20	17	12	7	1								
32	29	27	23	20													
	Depression of Wet Bulb																
	0°	0.5°	1.0°	1.5°	2.0°	2.5°	3.0°	3.5°	4.0°	4.5°	5.0°	5.5°	6.0°	6.5°	7.0°	7.5°	
30	29	27	26	23	24	23	21	19	17	15	13	11	8	5	3	0	
28	26	25	23	20	22	20	18	16	14	12	10	7	4	1			
26	24	22	21	19	19	17	15	13	11	9	6	4	0				
24	23	21	20	18	16	14	12	10	8	5	2						
22	21	19	17	16	14	11	9	7	4	1							
20	19	17	15	13	11	9	6	4	1								
18	16	14	12	10	8	6	3	0									
16	14	12	10	8	5	3	0										
14	12	10	7	5	2	0											
12	10	7	5	2	0												

See footnotes to Table 15 (page 137)

TABLE 19

CONVERSION OF TEMPERATURE READINGS ON THE FAHRENHEIT SCALE TO THE CELSIUS
(FORMERLY 'CENTIGRADE') AND ABSOLUTE SCALES

°F	°C	°A	°F	°C	°A	°F	°C	°A
0 ..	- 17·8	255·2	40	+ 4·4	277·4	80	+ 26·7	299·7
1 ..	17·2	55·8	41	5·0	78·0	81	27·2	300·2
2 ..	16·7	56·3	42	5·6	78·6	82	27·8	0·8
3 ..	16·1	56·9	43	6·1	79·1	83	28·3	1·3
4 ..	15·6	57·4	44	6·7	79·7	84	28·9	1·9
5 ..	15·0	58·0	45	7·2	80·2	85	29·4	2·4
6 ..	14·4	58·6	46	7·8	80·8	86	30·0	3·0
7 ..	13·9	59·1	47	8·3	81·3	87	30·6	3·6
8 ..	13·3	59·7	48	8·9	81·9	88	31·1	4·1
9 ..	12·8	260·2	49	9·4	282·4	89	31·7	304·7
10 ..	12·2	260·8	50	10·0	283·0	90	32·2	305·2
11 ..	11·7	61·3	51	10·6	83·6	91	32·8	5·8
12 ..	11·1	61·9	52	11·1	84·1	92	33·3	6·3
13 ..	10·6	62·4	53	11·7	84·7	93	33·9	6·9
14 ..	10·0	63·0	54	12·2	85·2	94	34·4	7·4
15 ..	9·4	63·6	55	12·8	85·8	95	35·0	8·0
16 ..	8·9	64·1	56	13·3	86·3	96	35·6	8·6
17 ..	8·3	64·7	57	13·9	86·9	97	36·1	9·1
18 ..	7·8	65·2	58	14·4	87·4	98	36·7	9·7
19 ..	7·2	265·8	59	15·0	288·0	99	37·2	310·2
20 ..	6·7	266·3	60	15·6	288·6	100	37·8	310·8
21 ..	6·1	66·9	61	16·1	89·1	101	38·3	11·3
22 ..	5·6	67·4	62	16·7	89·7	102	38·9	11·9
23 ..	5·0	68·0	63	17·2	90·2	103	39·4	12·4
24 ..	4·4	68·6	64	17·8	90·8	104	40·0	13·0
25 ..	3·9	69·1	65	18·3	91·3	105	40·6	13·6
26 ..	3·3	69·7	66	18·9	91·9	106	41·1	14·1
27 ..	2·8	70·2	67	19·4	92·4	107	41·7	14·7
28 ..	2·2	70·8	68	20·0	93·0	108	42·2	15·2
29 ..	1·7	271·3	69	20·6	293·6	109	42·8	315·8
30 ..	1·1	271·9	70	21·1	294·1	110	43·3	316·3
31 ..	- 0·6	72·4	71	21·7	94·7	111	43·9	16·9
32 ..	0·0	73·0	72	22·2	95·2	112	44·4	17·4
33 ..	+ 0·6	73·6	73	22·8	95·8	113	45·0	18·0
34 ..	1·1	74·1	74	23·3	96·3	114	45·6	18·6
35 ..	1·7	74·7	75	23·9	96·9	115	46·1	19·1
36 ..	2·2	75·2	76	24·4	97·4	116	46·7	19·7
37 ..	2·8	75·8	77	25·0	98·0	117	47·2	20·2
38 ..	3·3	76·3	78	25·6	98·6	118	47·8	20·8
39 ..	+ 3·9	276·9	79	+ 26·1	299·1	119	+ 48·3	321·3

TABLE 20

CONVERSION OF NAUTICAL MILES TO STATUTE MILES AND KILOMETRES

Nautical Miles	Statute Miles	Kilometres	Nautical Miles	Statute Miles	Kilometres
1	1·2	1·9	20	23·0	37
2	2·3	3·7	30	34·5	56
3	3·5	5·6	40	46·1	74
4	4·6	7·4	50	57·6	93
5	5·8	9·3	60	69·1	111
6	6·9	11·1	70	80·6	130
7	8·1	13·0	80	92·1	148
8	9·2	14·8	90	103·6	167
9	10·4	16·7	100	115·2	185
10	11·5	18·5			

Based on Nautical Mile of 6,080 feet.

TABLE 21

CONVERSION OF FEET TO METRES

Feet	Metres	Feet	Metres	Feet	Metres	Feet	Metres
1	0·30	20	6·1	200	61	2,000	610
2	0·61	30	9·1	300	91	3,000	910
3	0·91	40	12·2	400	122	4,000	1,220
4	1·22	50	15·2	500	152	5,000	1,520
5	1·52	60	18·3	600	183	6,000	1,830
6	1·83	70	21·3	700	213	7,000	2,130
7	2·13	80	24·4	800	244	8,000	2,440
8	2·44	90	27·4	900	274	9,000	2,740
9	2·74	100	30·5	1,000	305	10,000	3,050
10	3·05						

TABLE 22

To face page 146 (i)

TO OBTAIN APPROXIMATELY THE TRUE FORCE AND DIRECTION OF THE WIND, FROM ITS APPARENT FORCE AND DIRECTION, ON THE DECK OF A MOVING VESSEL

Apparent force of wind, Beaufort scale.	Apparent direction of wind, in degrees off the bow.	0°	10°	20°	30°	40°	50°	Apparent force of wind, Beaufort scale
		5 10 15 20 25 30	5 10 15 20 25 30	5 10 15 20 25 30	5 10 15 20 25 30	5 10 15 20 25 30	5 10 15 20 25 30	
1	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	180 180 180 180 180 180 1 3 4 5 6 7	174 178 179 179 179 179 1 3 4 5 6 7	167 176 177 178 178 179 1 3 4 5 6 7	163 174 176 177 177 178 1 3 4 5 6 7	161 172 175 177 177 177 2 3 4 5 6 7	158 171 175 176 176 177 2 3 4 5 6 7	1
2	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	— 180 180 180 180 180 0 2 3 4 5 6	96 171 175 177 177 178 1 2 3 4 5 6	100 163 171 174 175 176 1 2 3 4 5 6	105 157 168 171 173 174 1 2 3 4 5 6	110 154 165 169 171 173 1 3 4 5 5 6	115 152 163 168 170 172 2 3 4 5 6 6	2
3	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	0 180 180 180 180 180 2 1 2 4 5 5	24 126 167 172 175 176 2 1 3 4 5 6	44 116 156 166 170 172 2 2 3 4 5 6	62 116 150 161 166 169 2 2 3 4 5 6	75 118 146 157 163 167 2 3 4 4 5 6	86 121 145 155 162 165 3 3 4 4 5 6	3
4	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	0 0 180 180 180 180 3 1 1 3 4 5	15 32 116 159 169 172 3 2 1 3 4 5	30 56 110 145 159 166 3 2 2 3 4 5	45 73 112 138 153 160 3 3 3 3 4 5	59 85 116 138 150 156 3 3 3 4 5 6	70 97 121 138 148 155 4 3 4 4 5 6	4
5	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	0 0 0 180 180 180 4 3 1 1 2 4	13 21 43 112 152 164 4 3 2 2 3 4	27 40 68 108 137 152 4 3 3 3 3 4	39 56 82 110 130 144 4 4 3 3 4 4	52 70 93 115 131 142 4 4 4 4 4 5	64 82 102 119 131 141 4 4 4 5 5 6	5
6	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	0 0 0 0 180 180 5 4 3 2 1 2	13 17 25 49 102 144 5 4 3 2 2 3	25 33 47 71 103 130 5 4 4 3 3 4	37 48 63 85 107 125 5 4 4 4 4 4	49 61 77 95 112 125 5 5 5 4 5 5	60 73 88 103 117 127 6 5 5 5 5 6	6
7	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	0 0 0 0 0 — 6 5 4 3 2 0	12 15 20 28 47 83 6 5 4 4 3 2	24 29 38 51 71 97 6 5 5 4 4 4	36 43 54 68 85 103 6 6 5 4 4 4	47 56 68 80 95 109 6 6 5 5 5 5	58 68 79 91 103 114 6 6 6 6 6 6	7
8	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	0 0 0 0 0 0 7 6 6 5 4 3	12 14 17 21 30 45 7 6 6 5 4 3	23 27 33 41 53 69 7 7 6 5 4 4	34 40 47 57 69 84 7 7 6 6 5 5	45 53 61 71 82 94 7 7 6 6 6 6	56 64 73 82 93 102 8 7 7 7 7 7	8
9	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	0 0 0 0 0 0 8 8 7 6 5 4	11 13 15 18 22 30 8 8 7 6 5 4	22 25 30 35 43 53 8 8 7 6 6 5	33 38 44 51 59 70 8 8 7 7 6 6	45 50 57 65 73 82 9 8 8 7 7 7	56 62 69 76 84 93 9 8 8 8 8 8	9
10	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	0 0 0 0 0 0 9 9 8 7 6 6	11 12 14 16 19 23 9 9 8 7 6 6	22 24 28 32 37 44 9 9 8 7 7 6	33 37 41 47 53 60 9 9 8 8 7 7	44 49 53 60 66 74 10 9 9 8 8 8	54 60 66 72 78 85 10 9 9 9 9 8	10
11	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	0 0 0 0 0 0 10 10 9 8 8 7	11 12 13 15 17 20 10 10 9 8 8 7	22 24 26 29 33 38 10 10 9 9 8 7	33 36 39 43 48 54 10 10 9 9 8 8	44 47 51 56 62 68 11 10 10 9 9 9	54 58 63 68 73 79 11 10 10 10 10 9	11
12	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	0 0 0 0 0 0 11 11 10 9 9 8	11 12 13 14 16 18 11 11 10 10 9 8	22 23 25 28 31 35 11 11 10 10 9 9	32 35 38 41 45 49 11 11 10 10 10 9	43 46 50 54 58 63 12 11 11 10 10 10	54 57 61 66 70 75 12 11 11 11 10 10	12

TABLE 22—(contd.)

TO OBTAIN APPROXIMATELY THE TRUE FORCE AND DIRECTION OF THE WIND, FROM ITS APPARENT FORCE AND DIRECTION, ON THE DECK OF A MOVING VESSEL

Apparent force of wind, Beaufort scale.	Apparent direction of wind, in degrees off the bow.	60°						70°						80°						90°						100°						110°						Apparent force of wind, Beaufort scale
	Speed of vessel in knots	5	10	15	20	25	30	5	10	15	20	25	30	5	10	15	20	25	30	5	10	15	20	25	30	5	10	15	20	25	30	5	10	15	20	25	30	
1	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	156 2	171 3	174 4	176 5	176 6	176 7	157 2	170 3	174 4	175 5	175 6	176 7	157 2	170 3	173 4	175 5	175 6	176 7	158 2	170 3	173 4	175 5	175 6	176 7	159 2	171 3	174 4	175 5	175 6	176 7	162 2	171 4	174 4	175 5	176 6	176 7	1
2	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	120 2	151 3	162 4	167 5	169 6	171 7	125 2	152 3	161 4	166 5	169 6	171 7	130 2	153 3	162 4	166 5	169 6	171 7	135 3	154 4	162 4	167 5	169 6	171 7	139 3	156 4	163 5	167 5	169 6	171 7	145 3	159 4	164 5	168 6	170 6	172 7	2
3	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	96 3	125 3	145 4	154 5	160 6	164 6	105 3	129 3	144 4	154 5	160 6	164 7	112 3	133 4	146 4	155 5	160 6	164 7	121 3	139 4	150 5	157 6	161 6	164 7	128 3	143 4	153 5	158 6	162 7	165 7	134 4	148 4	156 5	160 6	164 7	166 8	3
4	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	82 4	104 4	125 4	139 5	147 6	153 6	92 4	113 4	129 5	141 5	148 6	154 7	101 4	120 4	134 5	143 6	150 6	155 7	111 4	126 5	138 5	146 6	152 7	156 7	119 4	132 5	143 6	149 6	154 7	158 8	127 4	139 5	147 6	153 7	157 7	160 8	4
5	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	75 5	92 5	109 5	123 6	133 6	141 6	85 5	102 5	116 6	128 6	136 7	143 7	95 5	110 6	122 6	132 7	139 7	145 7	105 5	118 6	129 6	137 7	143 7	148 8	114 5	126 6	135 6	142 7	147 8	151 8	123 5	133 6	141 7	146 8	150 8	154 8	5
6	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	71 6	84 5	98 6	110 6	121 6	130 7	82 6	94 6	106 6	117 7	126 7	133 7	92 6	104 6	114 7	123 7	131 8	137 8	102 6	112 7	122 7	129 8	136 8	141 8	111 6	121 7	129 8	135 8	140 9	145 9	120 6	129 7	136 8	141 9	145 9	149 9	6
7	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	69 7	79 6	90 6	100 6	110 7	119 7	79 7	89 7	99 7	108 8	117 8	124 8	89 7	99 7	108 8	116 8	123 8	129 8	99 7	108 8	116 8	123 8	129 9	134 9	109 7	117 8	124 8	130 9	135 9	139 9	118 7	126 8	132 8	136 9	141 9	145 10	7
8	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	67 8	75 7	84 7	93 7	102 8	109 8	77 8	86 8	94 8	102 8	109 8	116 8	88 8	96 8	103 8	110 9	117 9	123 9	98 8	105 9	112 9	118 9	124 9	129 9	107 8	114 9	120 9	126 10	131 10	135 10	117 8	123 9	128 9	133 10	137 10	140 11	8
9	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	66 9	73 8	80 8	87 8	94 8	102 8	76 9	83 9	90 9	97 9	104 9	110 9	87 9	93 9	100 9	106 9	112 10	116 10	97 9	102 9	109 9	114 10	119 10	124 10	106 9	112 9	117 10	122 10	127 11	131 11	116 9	121 10	126 10	130 11	134 11	137 12	9
10	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	65 10	71 9	77 9	83 9	89 9	96 9	75 10	81 10	87 10	93 10	99 10	104 10	86 10	91 10	97 10	102 10	108 10	112 10	96 10	101 10	106 10	111 11	116 11	120 11	105 10	110 10	115 11	119 11	123 12	127 12	115 10	119 11	124 11	128 12	131 12	134 12	10
11	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	65 11	69 10	74 10	79 10	85 10	91 10	75 11	80 11	85 11	90 11	95 11	100 11	85 11	90 11	95 11	99 11	104 11	108 11	95 11	100 11	104 11	109 12	113 12	116 12	104 11	109 11	113 12	117 12	121 12	125 12	114 11	119 12	123 12	126 12	129 12	132 12	11
12	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	64 12	68 11	72 11	77 11	81 11	86 11	74 12	79 12	83 12	87 12	92 12	96 12	84 12	88 12	93 12	97 12	101 12	106 12	94 12	98 12	103 12	106 12	110 12	114 12	104 12	108 12	112 12	115 12	118 12	121 12	114 12	118 12	121 12	124 12	127 12	130 12	12

Beaufort Wind Scale ..	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Average Velocity in Knots	0	2	5	9	13	18	24	30	37	44	52	60	68

See footnotes overleaf.

TABLE 22—(contd.)

To face page 146 (iii)

TO OBTAIN APPROXIMATELY THE TRUE FORCE AND DIRECTION OF THE WIND, FROM ITS APPARENT FORCE AND DIRECTION, ON THE DECK OF A MOVING VESSEL

Apparent force of wind, Beaufort scale.	Apparent direction of wind, in degrees off the bow.	120°						130°						140°						150°						160°						170°						180°						Apparent force of wind, Beaufort scale.
	Speed of vessel in knots	5	10	15	20	25	30	5	10	15	20	25	30	5	10	15	20	25	30	5	10	15	20	25	30	5	10	15	20	25	30	5	10	15	20	25	30							
1	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	164	172	175	176	176	177	167	173	175	176	177	177	169	174	176	177	177	178	172	176	177	178	178	178	174	177	178	178	178	179	177	179	179	179	179	179	180	180	180	180	180	180	1
2	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	150	162	166	170	171	172	155	164	169	171	172	174	160	167	171	173	174	174	165	170	173	174	175	176	170	174	175	176	176	177	175	177	178	178	178	178	180	180	180	180	180	180	2
3	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	142	152	159	163	166	168	148	157	162	165	168	170	155	161	166	168	170	172	160	166	169	171	172	174	168	171	173	174	175	176	173	175	176	177	177	177	180	180	180	180	180	180	3
4	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	135	145	152	156	159	162	142	151	156	160	164	165	150	157	161	164	166	168	158	163	166	168	170	171	166	169	171	172	173	174	173	174	175	176	176	177	180	180	180	180	180	180	4
5	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	131	140	146	151	154	157	140	146	152	156	158	161	148	154	158	161	163	165	156	160	163	166	167	168	164	167	169	170	172	172	172	173	174	175	175	176	180	180	180	180	180	180	5
6	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	129	136	142	147	150	153	138	144	149	152	156	158	147	151	155	158	160	162	155	159	161	163	166	167	164	166	168	169	170	171	172	173	174	175	175	180	180	180	180	180	180	6	
7	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	128	134	139	143	147	150	137	142	146	150	152	155	146	150	153	156	158	160	154	157	160	162	163	165	163	165	167	168	169	170	171	172	174	174	174	175	180	180	180	180	180	180	7
8	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	126	132	136	140	143	146	135	140	144	147	150	153	145	148	151	154	157	158	154	156	159	160	162	164	162	164	166	167	168	169	171	172	173	174	174	174	180	180	180	180	180	180	8
9	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	125	129	134	138	141	144	135	138	142	145	148	150	144	147	150	152	155	156	154	155	157	159	161	163	162	164	165	166	168	168	171	172	173	173	174	174	180	180	180	180	180	180	9
10	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	124	128	132	135	138	141	134	137	141	143	146	149	144	146	149	151	154	156	153	155	156	158	160	162	162	163	164	165	167	168	171	172	173	173	173	174	180	180	180	180	180	180	10
11	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	123	128	131	134	137	139	134	137	140	142	145	147	143	146	148	150	152	154	153	155	156	158	160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167	171	171	172	173	173	174	180	180	180	180	180	180	11
12	True direction, degrees off the bow .. True force, Beaufort scale	123	127	130	133	135	137	134	136	138	141	143	145	143	145	147	149	150	152	153	154	156	157	159	160	162	163	164	165	166	167	171	171	172	172	173	173	180	180	180	180	180	180	12

Beaufort Wind Scale	..	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Average Velocity in Knots		0	2	5	9	13	18	24	30	37	44	52	60	68

See footnotes on first page of this Table.

APPENDIX

UNITS OF THE C.G.S. (CENTIMETRE-GRAMME-SECOND) SYSTEM

The **Gramme** is the metric unit of mass. It is the thousandth part of the standard **kilogramme** of the International Bureau of Weights and Measures.

The **Metre** is the unit of length in the metric system, and the **Centimetre** is one-hundredth of a metre. The metre was originally intended as a geographical unit and was taken as one ten-millionth of the earth's quadrant. One **kilometre** is 1,000 metres.

The **Second** is the universal unit of time.

The unit of **Velocity**, in the C.G.S. system, is a velocity of a centimetre per second.

The unit of **Acceleration**, in the C.G.S. system, is an acceleration of one unit of velocity per second (one centimetre per second per second).

The unit of **Force**, in the C.G.S. system, is the force which produces an acceleration of one centimetre per second per second in a mass of one gramme. It is called a **Dyne**.

The unit of **Pressure**, in the C.G.S. system, is a dyne per square centimetre, but as this unit is exceedingly small a practical unit of atmospheric pressure is substituted, which is one thousand times as great, and is known as a **Millibar**. A **Bar**, which is one thousand millibars, is very nearly equal to the mean atmospheric pressure at sea level.

INDEX

Abnormal compass deviation	113	Barometer:	
Abnormal refraction	93	accuracy of reading	11
Abnormal rise of sea level	111	aneroid	12
Abnormal waves	111	care of	9
Absolute scale	21	change or tendency of	16
Accidents to instruments	119	conversion of inches to millibars ..	8, 134
Agents, Merchant Navy	118	correction slide	7
'Aguaje'	111	corrections to	4
Airglow	86	graduation of scales	3
Altitude, correction for mercury		gravity, correction for	6, 7
barometer	6, 7	index corrections to	5
correction for aneroid barometer	13	inch, corrections to	5
Alto cumulus	45	Kew-pattern marine	2, 3
castellanus	45	mercury	1
lenticularis	45	millibar, corrections to	7
Altostratus	45	position of	8
Anemometer	33	reading of	10
use at sea	39	reduction to standard level	6, 7
Aneroid barometer	12	scales, graduation of	3
adjustment to reading of	14	setting up and taking down	9
corrections to readings	13	temperature of	10
precautions necessary	13	temperature, corrections for	5, 7
precision	13	Barometric tendency:	
Artificial satellites	91	characteristic of	17
Aspirated and whirling psychro-		allowances for course and speed ..	17
meters	27	Beaufort notation	40
Astronomical phenomena	76	Beaufort scale of wind force	35-37
Atlantic Weather Bulletin	118	Bioluminescence	112
Atlases:		Brocken Spectre	93
ice	118	Bucket:	
meteorological	118	canvas	29
ocean current	118	rubber	29
Atmosphere, phenomena of higher	82	Bulletins	118
phenomena of lower	93		
regions of the high	82	Canvas bucket	29
Atmospheric pressure	1	Capillarity	3
Atmospherics, sudden enhancement		Care of instruments:	
of	82	aneroid barometer	13
Aureole	94	barograph	15
Aurora:		mercury barometer	9
activity of	86	thermometers	22
brightness of	87	Cargo, care and ventilation of	29
colour of	87	Castellanus, Alto cumulus	45
direction	87	Celsius scale	21
elevation	87	CGS system, units of	4, 147
forms of	87, 88	Change or tendency of barometer	16
height	85	Characteristic of barometer ten-	
ionospheric and magnetic storms,		density	17
connection with	85	Circumzenithal arc	102
observation of	86	Cirrocumulus	45
photography	89	Cirrostratus	45
regions of	85	Cirrus	44
seasonal and night variation of	86	Clock and chart for barograph	16
sunspot cycle variations	86	Cloud:	
Backing wind	38	amount, estimation of	51
Ball lightning	104	base recorder	34
Balloons, meteorological	34	height balloons	34
Bar (pressure unit)	4	height, estimation of	50
Barograph	14	high, specification of	49
care of	15	iridescent	103
clock and chart	16	low, specification of	48
open-scale	14	medium, specification of	48
setting of	15	mother-of-pearl	84, 104
standardizing	15	searchlight	34
		types	44

INDEX—*contd.*

Clouds:					Fractocumulus	47
code for	47				Fractostratus	46
heap	44				Frost	25
noctilucent	83					
observation of	47				Gegenschein	79
sheet	44				'Glory'	94
Coloration, of the sea	111				Gravity correction for barometers	6, 7
of the sky, day-time	107				Green flash	96
night	109				Gust, definition of	40
twilight	108					
Comets	77					
Commonwealth scheme for marine					Halo phenomena	98
meteorology	116				circumscribed	102
Compass deviations, abnormal	113				circumzenithal arc	102
Conversion, inches to millibars	8, 134				colour of	99
feet to metres	145				complex	98
nautical miles to statute miles and					cross	103
kilometres	145				description of	101
thermometer scales	21, 144				lower contact arc to 22° halo	102
Corona, solar and lunar	94				lunar	98
solar during eclipse	76				mock moons (paraselenae)	98, 102
Coronal rays	87				mock suns (parhelia)	98, 102
Corposants	95				mock sun (or moon) ring	100, 102
Counter glow	108				observation of	99
Crepuscular rays	95				of 22°	101
Cross swells	52, 56				of 46°	102
Cumulonimbus	47				parhelic circle	102
Cumulus	47				sun pillar	102
Currents, ocean:					upper contact arc to 22° halo	102
charts	118				Haze	41
meter	62				Heap clouds	44
observations	60				High atmosphere, phenomena of	82
					High cloud, specification of form	49
Danger messages	120				Humidity and temperature	23
Data logging equipment	32				Humidity, relative	26, 42
Depression of wet-bulb	23, 26				Hygrometers	23
Desynn transmitter	33				observations, application in care	
Dew-point	26				and ventilation of cargo	29
Distant-reading sea thermometer	30					
Diurnal variation of pressure	18				Ice, detection by radar	75
Drizzle, definition of	41				observations	62
Dry- and wet-bulb thermometers	23				terms arranged by subject	62
Dustfall at sea	96				terms arranged in alphabetical	
Dust, meteoric	89				order	64
volcanic	77, 94, 96, 107, 109				Inch barometer:	
Dyne	4				conversion to millibars	8
					corrections to	5
					graduation of scale	3
Earthlight (airglow)	89				Infra-red radiation	31
Earthquakes, submarine	112				Instrumental observations	1
Earth-shadow	108				Instruments, accidents to	119
Eclipses	76				supply and return of	119
Electrical thermometers	20				International Convention for Safety	
Engine-room intake temperature	31				of Life at Sea, 1960	120
					International Meteorological	
Fahrenheit scale	21				Organization	117
<i>Fata Morgana</i>	93				Ionospheric storm	82
Fireballs	89, 90				Iridescent cloud	103
Flash, green	96					
red	97				Kew-pattern marine barometer	2, 3
Fog	41					
Fog-bow	106				Landslides	112
Föhn wind, connection with alto-						
cumulus	45					

INDEX—contd.

Lenticular altocumulus	45
Lightning	104
ships struck by	104, 113
Log, meteorological	115
Low cloud, specification of form ..	48
Lunar:	
coronae	94
eclipses	76
haloes	98
rainbow	106
Magnetic disturbances	82
storms	83
Magslip transmitter	33
Mammato cumulus	47
Marine meteorology and the British Commonwealth	116
Marine Observer	73, 119
Marine phenomena	111
Medium cloud, specification of form ..	48
Megadyne	4
Merchant Navy Agents	118
Mercury barometer (see under Barometer)	
Meteorological:	
charts	118
instruments, general	33
Officers, Port	118
services for shipping	117
work at sea	115, 122
Meteors:	
and meteorites	89
appearance and speed of	90
fireballs	89, 90
frequency of	90
height of	90
observation of	90
shooting stars	89
showers of	90
Milky sea	112
Millibar barometer (see under Barometer)	
Millibar, definition of	4
Millimeters, barometer graduations ..	3
Mirage	93
Mist	41
Mock suns and moons	98, 102
Moon, eclipse of	76
green flash	96
Moon and sun, coloured	94
Mother-of-pearl cloud	84
Muslin and wick	24
Muslin caps	24
Nimbostratus	46
Noctilucent clouds	85
Non-instrumental observations	35
Novae (new stars)	79
Ocean current observations	60
Ocean waves	52
Open-scale barograph	14
'Optical haze'	107

Pannus	46, 47
Paraselenae (mock moons)	98, 102
Parhelia of 22°	102
Parhelic circle	102
Phenomena:	
artificial satellites and research	
rockets	91
haloes	98
of high atmosphere	82
of lower atmosphere	93
marine	111
observation of	73
radar	74
zodiacal light	78
Phosphorescent wheels	112
Pillar, sun	102
Pilot-balloon ascent	34
Plankton	111
Port Meteorological Officers and Agents	118
Precipitation	41
Pressure:	
atmospheric	1
definition of	4
diurnal variation	17
Psychrometers	28
Radar:	
ice, detection of	75
observations by	74
phenomena	74
Radiation, solar	31
infra-red	31
ultra-violet	31
Radio:	
atmospherics	82
blackouts, short-wave	82
fade-outs, short-wave	82
Radiosonde	34
Rain, definition of	41
Rainbows	105
abnormal	106
fog-bow or Ulloa's Ring	106
lunar	106
observation of	106
reflection	106
solar	105
supernumerary and secondary	105, 106
white	106
Rainfall	33
Raingauge	33
Rays, auroral	87
crepuscular	95
Red flash	97
Refraction, abnormal and mirage	93
Relative humidity	26, 42
Research rockets	92
Rubber bucket	29
Safety of Life at Sea, International Convention, 1960	119
St. Elmo's fire	95
Scintillation	106
Scirocco, connection with altocumulus ..	45

INDEX—*contd.*

connection with coloured sun or moon	94	Tendency or change of pressure ..	17
Screen, marine	26	allowance for course and speed ..	17
design of	26	characteristic of	17
exposure of thermometers	26	diurnal variation	18
position of	27	Thermometers	20
Scud	46	Absolute scale	21
Sea and swell, distinction between ..	52	alcohol	20
Sea, coloration	111	Celsius scale	21
criterion for judging wind force ..	36-37	conversion of scales	21, 144
level, abnormal rise of	111	distant-reading, sea	30
temperature	29	dry- and wet-bulb	23
water sample	111	electrical	20, 22, 30
Selected Ships	116	exposure of	26
Sheet clouds	44	Fahrenheit scale	21
'Shooting stars'	89	graduations of	20
Shower cloud	47	Kelvin (or Absolute) scale	21
Showers, definition of	41	liquid-in-glass	20, 22
Sky, appearance of (Beaufort notation) ..	40	reading of	22
coloration, day-time	107	scale markings	21
night	109	sea	29
twilight	108	setting up of	27
Slide, correction	7	Tidal waves	111
Smoke pollution	107	Trochoidal wave form	53
Solar coronae	94	Tropical storms, warning of ..	120, 121, 122
eclipses	76	Twilight	109
flares	81	abnormally long	109
haloes	98	arch	108
radiation	31	astronomical and civil	109
rainbow	105	duration of	109
Solarimeters	31	sky coloration	109
Spectre, Brocken	93	Twinkling of stars	106
Squall, definition of	40	Ulloa's Ring (fog-bow)	106
Stars, new	79	Ultra-violet radiation	31
Storms:		Upper-air temperature and humidity ..	34
ionospheric	82	Upper winds	34
magnetic	83	Veering wind	38
tropical, warning of	120, 121, 122	Velocity (wind), parallelogram of ..	39
Stratocumulus	46	Ventilation of cargo	29
Stratus	46	Virga	46, 47
Submarine earthquakes	112	Visibility	42
Sun (see also under Solar):		recorder or transmissometer ..	34
coloured	94	scale for use at sea	42
green flash	96	Volcanic dust	77, 94, 96, 107, 109
mock	98, 102	Volcanic eruptions	96, 112
pillar	102	Voluntary meteorological work at ..	
prominences	77	sea	115
red flash	97	Voluntary Observing Fleet	116
Sunspots	80	atlases for	118
cycle variation	80, 86	Waterspouts	110
Supplementary Ships	116	Wave recorders	52, 58
Sweating of ship and cargo	29	Waves	52
Swell	38, 52	abnormal	111
and sea, distinction between	52	below sea surface	54
cross	52, 56	distinction between sea and swell ..	52
origin and travel of	55	groups of	55
Temperature:		importance of observations	56
and humidity	23	in shallow water	55
dry- and wet-bulb	23	observing	56
effect of local heating on	26	observing from Weather Ships ..	58
engine-room intake	31	origin and travel of swell	55
sea	29		
upper-air	34		

INDEX—contd.

simple characteristics of	..	52	Wind:				
tidal	..	111	-finding radar	..	..	..	34
Weather, observations	..	40	speed and direction	..	..	..	33, 35
notation, Beaufort	..	40	upper, measurement of	..	..	..	34
Wet-bulb thermometer	..	23	Work at sea, guidance for the conduct				
during frost	..	25	of	..	..	..	118
higher than dry-bulb	..	25	World Meteorological Organization				117
humidity	..	26					
muslin and wick for	..	24	Zodiacal band	..	..	..	79
operation of	..	23	Zodiacal light	..	..	..	78

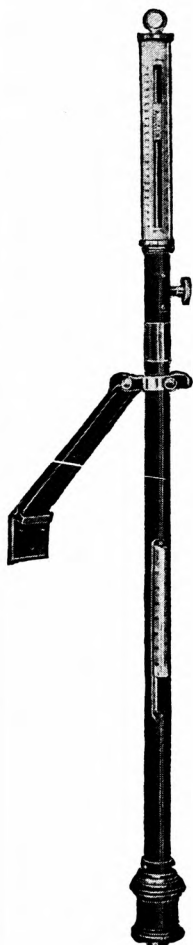
The Government accepts no responsibility for any of the statements in the advertisements appearing in this publication, and the inclusion of any particular advertisement is no guarantee that the goods advertised therein have received official approval.

PROVEN INSTRUMENTS

for measuring

**PRESSURE
HUMIDITY**

**TEMPERATURE
PRECIPITATION**



MERCURIAL BAROMETERS

ANEROID BAROMETERS

BAROGRAPHS

THERMOGRAPHS

THERMO-HYDROGRAPHS

HYGROGRAPHS

HAIR HYGROMETERS

PAPER HYGROMETERS

RAINFALL RECORDERS

RAIN GAUGES

ETC.



Established 1834

F. DARTON & Co. Ltd.
WATFORD, HERTS

WATFORD 26019 EXCEPTIONAL WATFORD
CONTRACTORS TO MINISTRY OF DEFENCE

World class navies demand world class gyro compass equipment.

... and the 25 navies that have
chosen ARMA-BROWN Gyro
Compasses get that service.
S. G. Brown Ltd, being part of
Hawker Siddeley Dynamics
does offer world wide service
for their gyro compasses,
steering controls and automatic
helmsman equipment.

If you're in world class
why not have world class
equipment and service?

Photograph by courtesy of
Vosper/Thornycroft of
Portsmouth, U.K.



**HAWKER SIDDELEY
NAVIGATION**

S. G. BROWN LTD, SHAKESPEARE STREET, WATFORD, HERTS.

Hawker Siddeley Group supplies mechanical, electrical and aerospace
equipment with world-wide sales and service.

50,000 charts in stock



Kelvin Hughes always have 50,000 charts in stock, corrected and ready to go to sea. So when you come to the world's largest chart agents, you'll normally have the charts you need in minutes, not days.

We also offer an automatic New Edition service. This means that new charts are sent to a ship's next port of call without any action on her part. The shipping company is relieved of much paper work, and the necessary records of each vessel are administered by us at no extra charge.

For the most efficient chart service in the world, come to the world's largest chart agents. *When you install a KH product you install an organisation.*

KELVIN HUGHES

A DIVISION OF SMITHS INDUSTRIES LIMITED
61, Clare House, Minories, London, EC3. Tel: 01-4818741. Cables: Marinst, London

